136 BEST MODEL ESSAYS

CÁC BÀI LUẬN MẪU HAY NHẤT

PLUS IELTS & TOEFL ESSAYS

All Topics and Dialogues with Important Notes on Essays Writing

2001-2002

by Milon Nandy

First News

Lời giới thiệu

Trong các kỳ thi tiếng Anh, thí sinh thường phải viết một hay nhiều bài luận để đánh giá khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ. Đây là một phần thi thường gây khó khăn cho thí sinh vì không chỉ đánh giá trình độ thông thạo ngôn ngữ mà còn kiểm tra kiến thức và khả năng suy luận, diễn giải vấn đề của thí sinh về một chủ đề nào đó.

Người học chỉ có thể viết thuần thục một bài luận hay một lá thư tiếng Anh khi đã trải qua một quá trình luyện tập lâu dài với những tài liệu hướng dẫn cụ thể, khoa học. Quyển sách "***136 Best Model Essays – Các Bài Luận Mẫu Hay Nhất***" này, với các bài luận thực tế trong nhiều tình huống sinh động khác nhau, sẽ cung cấp cho người học không chỉ các bài mẫu mà còn trình bày những cách thức và bí quyết để viết một bài luận hoặc một lá thư theo một chủ đề cụ thể, nhờ đó giúp học viên có thể áp dụng, điều chỉnh và viết tiếng Anh một cách tự tin hơn.

Các đề tài viết trong sách đề cập đến nhiều lĩnh vực khác nhau của cuộc sống như thương mại, chính trị, xã hội, khoa học, ngôn ngữ, nghệ thuật, học tập, vui chơi giải trí...

Để giúp người học tự rèn luyện cho mình một thói quen và phong cách viết, chúng tôi chỉ dịch song ngữ một số bài tiêu biểu để giới thiệu. Các bài sau, chúng tôi chỉ tóm lược dàn bài và chú giải từ khó để học viên tự luyện tập.

Trong lần cập nhật này, chúng tôi cung cấp thêm một số thông tin cơ bản về bài thi viết của hai kỳ thi tiếng Anh quan trọng hiện nay là TOEFL và IELTS. Đồng thời để giúp người học làm quen với hai dạng bài thi này, chúng tôi có đưa vào một số bài luận mẫu và đề bài để học viên tham khảo thêm.

Chúng tôi tin tưởng rằng cuốn sách này sẽ là một tài liệu tra cứu hữu ích và cần thiết cho các bạn học sinh, sinh viên và những người đang làm việc trong các lĩnh vực liên quan đến tiếng Anh.

BAN BIÊN DỊCH FIRST NEWS

PHƯƠNG PHÁP VIẾT BÀI LUẬN

1. Tầm quan trọng của bài luận viết

Bài luận viết là hình thức hiệu quả nhất trong số các dạng bài tập làm văn nhằm đánh giá sự tiến bộ của học viên về trình độ tiếng Anh. Để viết một bài luận hay, người viết phải hiểu rõ chủ đề cũng như biết cách sắp xếp và trình bày các sự kiện theo một trình tự logic. Hơn nữa phải diễn đạt quan điểm, tình cảm, ý tưởng, nhận thức rõ ràng, mạch lạc và hấp dẫn bên cạnh văn phong truyền cảm. Tất cả đòi hỏi kiến thức từ vựng vững chắc, trí tưởng tượng phong phú và cách diễn đạt rõ ràng, linh hoạt. Vì thế việc tham khảo nghiêm túc những cuốn sách chọn lọc là rất cần thiết, vì những kiến thức học hỏi khai thác được từ những tác phẩm hay đều góp phần phát triển khả năng biện luận, tư duy và viết lách ở một mức độ nào đó.

Khả năng viết luận không chỉ quan trọng trong thi cử mà còn liên quan đến nhiều vấn đề cá nhân. Phải thừa nhận rằng chúng ta đang sống trong một thế giới mà thông tin văn bản, ví dụ như thư từ, đóng vai trò rất quan trọng. Ngày nay, mỗi một người dân có trình độ văn hóa đều phải biết viết. Khả năng đọc viết thật sự quan trọng trong cuộc sống hiện đại. Sự nghiệp có thành công hay không còn tùy thuộc vào khả năng truyền đạt trong khi nói và viết. Vì vậy mọi học viên nên hãy thường xuyên thực hành viết luận về nhiều chủ đề khác nhau để phát triển khả năng viết văn trôi chảy và linh hoạt.

2. Những chú ý khi làm văn

Một trong những điểm mấu chốt để viết luận tốt là ý tưởng chung về một đề tài cụ thể. Nếu người viết không có những ý tưởng giá trị, bài luận chắc chắn sẽ nghèo nàn. Hơn nữa, nếu được miêu tả, diễn đạt khéo léo thì các sự việc bình thường cũng sẽ trở nên thú vị. Tuy nhiên, điều quan trọng nhất là câu văn phải rõ ràng, không quá hoa mỹ.

Sự diễn đạt rõ ràng phụ thuộc vào sự mạch lạc của ý tưởng. Thông thường, chỉ khi đã trải nghiệm qua một điều gì đó rồi thì người ta mới có ý tưởng chính xác về nó. Vì vậy trong bài thơ, học sinh nên chọn đề tài mình yêu thích và biết rõ hoặc một đề tài khêu gợi tư duy hay viết về kinh nghiệm cá nhân.

Trong giờ học và trong các kỳ thi, các đề tài được đưa ra để kiểm tra kiến thức của người viết. Tuy nhiên như vậy không có nghĩa là học viên chỉ cần biết rõ đề tài mình chọn là đủ. Quan trọng hơn, người viết phải diễn đạt sự việc bằng ngôn ngữ đơn giản, hấp dẫn, có hiệu lực. Vì vậy nên chọn cho mình một đề tài phù hợp, và nếu có thể, nên viết về kinh nghiệm riêng trong cuộc sống.

Ngoài ra, những lưu ý khác về bài luận viết cũng được bàn đến trong những phần tiếp theo đây.

3. Các dạng bài luận viết

Tùy theo mục đích, bài luận viết tạm thời được chia thành những dạng sau:

(**A**) The NARRATIVE ESSAY – văn tường thuật về một câu chuyện ngắn.

(**B**) The DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY – văn miêu tả, trong đó người viết sắp xếp sự kiện theo trình tự logic, miêu tả người hoặc nơi chốn.

(**C**) The ARGUMENTATIVE ESSAY – văn tranh luận, trình bày cho người đọc ý kiến của tác giả về một vấn đề tranh cãi. Ví dụ: kỷ luật ở nhà trường.

(**D**) The REFLECTIVE ESSAY – văn tự luận, thể hiện suy nghĩ của tác giả về một đề tài. Ví dụ: mơ ước của tôi khi trưởng thành.

(**E**) The EXPOSITORY hay FACTUAL ESSAY - văn bình giảng, giải thích về một vấn đề cụ thể, chẳng hạn: cách thức hoạt động của máy điện thoại

(**F**) The GENERAL ESSAY – luận văn tổng hợp trình hay chung chung về một đề tài: máy bay, tiền bạc v.v...

(**G**) The STRUCTURAL ESSAY - luận văn kết cấu, ở đây người viết được yêu cầu viết theo những chủ điểm cụ thể.

Tuy nhiên, không nên bó hẹp vào sự phân loại trên. Một đề tài có thể được viết dưới nhiều thể loại. Chẳng hạn đề tài "Làm vườn" có thể được viết theo lối miêu tả hay tổng hợp, nhưng cần thiết phải phân loại đề tài trước chứ không phải sau khi viết luận.

4. Cách thu thập tài liệu cho bài luận

Thể loại của bài luận phải được xác định trước khi bắt đầu viết bài. Một khi đã phác họa ***dàn ý*** của bài luận, người viết dễ dàng xây dựng cấu trúc của ***phần thân bài***, phần chính của bài văn truyền đạt thông tin của người viết cho người đọc.

Nếu có ít thông tin về đề tài một bài bình giảng chẳng hạn, người viết nên nghiên cứu thêm. Hãy đến thư viện để đọc sách tham khảo, từ điển bách khoa toàn thư, báo chí và những nguồn văn chương thích hợp khác rất hữu dụng. Khi đọc cần tóm tắt các sự kiện chứ không nên sao chép trong sách. Tuy nhiên đôi khi một hoặc hai cụm từ cũng giúp ích rất nhiều cho việc trau dồi từ vựng và phong cách viết. Dù vậy, thật may mắn là trong các kỳ thi ở trường, các đề bài luận thường đơn giản và các sự kiện dễ tìm. Mức độ yêu cầu tư duy và trí tưởng tượng cũng không cao lắm.

Nhưng đôi khi cảm hứng và nguồn tài liệu thật dồi dào đến nỗi người viết không biết nên chọn cái gì và bỏ cái gì. Vì vậy chỉ cần chọn từ nguồn tài liệu những gì cần thiết cho đề tài sau khi suy xét kỹ càng. Các thông tin lựa chọn phải là những thông tin thú vị và hữu ích nhất.

Ngoài ra, tài liệu để viết văn cũng có thể lấy từ sách, báo, tạp chí định kỳ và các loại tạp chí khác. Các chương trình phát thanh, truyền hình, phim ảnh cũng góp phần làm phong phú kiến thức của học sinh nếu biết cách sử dụng.

Cuối cùng, phải thừa nhận rằng trí nhớ là sức mạnh. Bộ não có thể lưu giữ một lượng lớn thông tin và kiến thức nếu học viên chịu khó suy nghĩ trong khi thu thập tư liệu để viết đề tài. Bàn bạc và thảo luận với bạn bè cũng kích thích trí nhớ và vì vậy thường cung cấp nguồn ý tưởng và kiến thức phong phú cho bài luận.

5. Cách lập dàn ý một bài luận

Sau khi thu thập tài liệu, bước tiếp theo là lập dàn ý. Điều này đòi hỏi công việc và suy nghĩ cẩn thận, bởi vì sự thành công của bài luận phụ thuộc phần lớn vào dàn ý.

Trước tiên, người viết phải ghi chú ngay những sự kiện và ý tưởng vừa nảy ra trong đầu óc mình. Sau đó phải sắp xếp và phân nhóm các sự kiện. Người viết phải xem xét kỹ các sự kiện và ý rồi viết tiêu đề để phân chia đề tài. Các tiêu đề sẽ đại diện cho từng đoạn của bài luận văn.

Sau mỗi tiêu đề, người viết phải sắp xếp sự kiện và ý tưởng theo trật tự miêu tả.

Đó là công việc chuẩn bị dàn ý sơ lược. Dàn ý này cần được xem lại và sửa chữa. Những sự kiện và ý tưởng không cần thiết, sau khi xem xét cần lược bỏ. Những sự kiện và chi tiết mới chợt nảy ra trong suy nghĩ của người viết cần được đưa vào chỗ chính xác trong bài văn. Cần chuyển những sự kiện được phân nhóm sai về đúng vị trí của nó.

6. Những nét quan trọng của dàn bài

Những nét đặc trưng của dàn bài và bài văn được viết từ dàn bài là mở bài và kết luận.

Thông thường nên mở bài một cách tự nhiên. Mở bài nên cung cấp thông tin cần thiết để hiểu phần thân bài. Vì vậy ở phần mở bài nên đưa vào tên các nhân vật, cảnh tượng hay tình huống của bài văn. Tóm lại phần mở bài chỉ là một đoạn ngắn của dàn ý.

Phần kết luận của bài văn nên gây ấn tượng cho người đọc nếu có thể. Một bài luận hay có thể bị làm hỏng hởi một kết luận nghèo nàn. Hơn nữa chính phần kết luận để lại những ấn tượng cuối cùng quyết định điểm của bài văn. Vì vậy phần kết luận nên bao gồm một câu hay đoạn văn ngắn tóm tắt toàn bộ vấn đề bài luận. Phần này cần xuất hiện trong dàn ý dưới hình thức một đoạn văn ngắn.

Cuối cùng, cần chú ý đến sự cân đối của dàn ý cũng như của bài luận. Trọng tâm chú ý là ở những vấn đề quan trọng, chiếm phần lớn bài luận. Những vấn đề kém quan trọng hơn được viết ngắn hơn và phần nào ít quan trọng nhất được viết ngắn nhất.

Sau đây là ví dụ của một dàn bài với chủ đề "Giá trị của du lịch".

Giá trị của du lịch.

Đoạn 1: Mở bài: So sánh khát vọng du lịch của con người với nhu cầu được bay của chim.

Đoạn 2: So sánh sự đi lại trước đây và hiện nay:

Trước đây (i) không có đường sá; (ii) không có phương tiện. Vì vậy đi lại rất khó khăn, hoạt động con người bị hạn chế.

Hiện nay: (i) rất nhiều đường sá, (ii) rất nhiều phương tiện giao thông. Vì vậy hoạt động của con người không bị hạn chế nữa, cho thấy nhu cầu mạnh mẽ về đi lại.

Đoạn 3: Du lịch cung cấp cho con người những cơ hội như: mở rộng kiến thức – gặp gỡ nhiều người ở nhiều vùng, miền khác nhau – hiểu biết những phong tục văn hóa nước ngoài – thăm viếng những danh lam thắng cảnh – mở rộng tầm nhìn – học ngoại ngữ.

Đoạn 4: Ích lợi của du lịch

Việc tiếp xúc với người nước ngoài giúp chúng ta:

(i) hiểu những suy nghĩ và thái độ của họ.

(ii) biết về lối sống và niềm tin của họ

(iii) học hỏi kinh nghiệm từ sự thất bại và thành công của họ

(iv) thiết lập quan hệ bạn bè

(v) đẩy lùi mối nghi ngờ

(vi) hợp tác và trao đổi ý kiến, kiến thức, quan điểm với nhau

Đoạn 5: Kết luận

Khát vọng phiêu lưu và học hỏi của con người là vô tận. Con người sẽ luôn luôn thích du lịch.

THE ESSAY:

When man first looked at the bird flying in the sky and wandering away into the unknown regions of the earth, he at once felt the urge to travel and visit the lands beyond his immediate confines. This urge to travel is still so strong that people everywhere are always going to other lands to satisfy the urge.

That travel improves the mind and adds to a person's knowledge cannot be denied. When a person travels he visits people of all races and places. He meets people whose customs and habits are not the same as his. He passes through areas of different climates and regions where even the plants and animals are different from those found in his own country. As he sees all these things he begins to realise how different the people and places are in different parts of the world. He also begins to learn that the struggles and occupations of the people in all parts of the earth are not the same. The work of the people of a country is influenced by geographical factors and religious beliefs.

The traveller also learns that though the people of the world do not follow the same customs and do the same kind of work everywhere, yet their feelings, hopes and desires are the same everywhere. A man in the

North Pole has the same feelings of love, sympathy and desperation as another in another distant part of the earth. They both laugh at and fight and struggle for the same thing such as food, love and security for their families and themselves. They also have the same hopes and desires. Knowledge of all these things improves the mind of the traveller to a great extent. He ceases to suspect strangers and becomes more friendly with people who are not of the same race, religion and customs as he is.

Finally, travel helps one to know about the geographical differences of the various countries of the world. One sees with one's own eyes and remembers things which are not written about in any book. Such knowledge broadens one's mind and makes one a better and more reasonable person. The value of travel is therefore not difficult to realise.

BÀI LUẬN

Khi lần đầu tiên nhìn về những cánh chim tung bay trên bầu trời và lướt xa dần về những vùng đất chưa từng được biết đến trên trái đất, con người ngay lập tức cảm thấy sự thôi thúc phải ra đi và viếng thăm những vùng đất bên kia ranh giới quen thuộc của mình. Sự thôi thúc ấy giờ đây vẫn còn mạnh mẽ đến nỗi ở đâu và lúc nào cũng có những người đang du lịch đến những xứ sở khác để thỏa mãn sự thúc giục này.

Không thể phủ nhận rằng chính du lịch đã mở mang trí óc và kiến thức con người. Khi du lịch ta có thể thăm viếng người dân thuộc mọi chủng tộc và xứ sở. Ta có thể gặp gỡ những người có phong tục và thói quen không giống mình. Ta có thể đi qua những vùng đất có khí hậu khác nhau và những nơi mà cả cây cối và thú vật cũng khác với ở nước mình. Khi chứng kiến những điều này, ta bắt đầu nhận ra sự khác biệt giữa con người và cảnh vật ở những phần khác nhau của thế giới. Ta cũng bắt đầu hiểu rằng những cuộc đấu tranh và chiếm hữu của con người trên trái đất không như nhau. Công việc của người dân ở một quốc gia bị ảnh hưởng bởi các yếu tố địa lý và tín ngưỡng.

Người hay du lịch cũng hiểu được rằng cho dù các dân tộc trên thế giới không có cùng phong tục tập quán và cũng không làm các công việc giống nhau, nhưng những tình cảm, hy vọng và mơ ước của họ thì ở đâu cũng vậy. Một người ở sống ở Bắc cực cũng có cảm giác yêu thương, cảm thông và tuyệt vọng như bất kỳ ai khác sống tại một vùng đất khác trên trái đất. Cả hai cùng cười, cùng tranh đấu và vật lộn vì những lý do như nhau như thực phẩm, tình yêu thương và sự an toàn cho gia đình và bản thân. Cả những ước mơ và khát vọng của họ cũng giống nhau.

Kiến thức về những điều này giúp mở mang trí tuệ của nhà du lịch rất nhiều. Ta sẽ không còn nghi ngờ những người lạ nữa, và trở nên thân thiện hơn với những người không cùng chủng tộc, tôn giáo và phong tục của mình.

Cuối cùng, du lịch giúp ta hiểu biết về những khác biệt địa lý giữa các quốc gia khác nhau trên thế giới. Ta được nhìn tận mắt và ghi nhớ những điều mà không một quyển sách nào đã từng ghi chép. Những kiến thức như thế mở rộng trí óc và làm cho người ta tốt hơn, dễ chịu hơn. Giá trị của du lịch vì thế rất dễ nhận thấy.

7. Một điểm quan trọng của bài luận

Một đặc điểm quan trọng trong bài luận là "sự chuyển tiếp", hay thủ thuật chuyển ý từ một đoạn sang đoạn tiếp theo. Người viết không nên nhảy từ ý này sang ý khác mà không chỉ ra sự liên hệ của đoạn sau với đoạn trước. Phần cuối của một đoạn là chuẩn bị cho đoạn kế tiếp. Đôi khi cần viết một câu ở cuối đoạn chỉ đơn thuần để cho thấy sự liên hệ với những gì tiếp sau mà không phải cung cấp thêm thông tin.

Trong một bài luận, cần phải chú trọng đến những điểm sau:

(i) Ngữ pháp
(ii) Trật tự chính xác của từ
(iii) Dấu chấm
(iv) Biến đổi độ dài và hình thức câu văn
(v) Sự trong sáng

Nên tránh những điều sau:

(i) Từ lóng
(ii) Từ viết tắt, ngoại trừ những từ được chấp nhận như 'Mr"
(iii) Sử dụng thường xuyên từ "tôi"
(iv) Ngôn ngữ giả tạo

Cuối cùng, sau khi đã viết xong bài luận nên đọc lại cẩn thận. Cần sửa đổi và bổ sung những chỗ cần thiết.

1. LIFE IN THE CITY

Life in the city is full of activity. Early in the morning hundreds of people rush out of their homes in the manner ants do when their nest is broken. Soon the streets are full of traffic. Shops and offices open, students flock[1] to their schools and the day's work begins. The city now throb[2] with activity, and it is full of noise. Hundreds of sight-seers[3], tourists and others visit many places of interest in the city while businessmen from various parts of the world arrive to transact business[4].

Then towards evening, the offices and day schools begin to close. Many of the shops too close. There is now a rush for buses and other means of transport[5]. Everyone seems to be in a hurry to reach home. As a result of this rush, many accidents occur. One who has not been to the city before finds it hard to move about at this time. Soon, however, there is almost no activity in several parts of the city. These parts are usually the business centres.

With the coming of night, another kind of activity begins. The streets are now full of colourful lights. The air is cooler and life becomes more leisurely. People now seek entertainment. Many visit the cinemas, parks and clubs, while others remain indoors to watch television or listen to the radio. Some visit friends and relatives and some spend their time reading books and magazines. Those who are interested in politics discuss the latest political developments. At the same time, hundreds of crimes are committed[6]. Thieves and robbers who wait for the coming of night become active, and misfortune[7] descends upon[8] many. For the greed[9] of a few, many are killed, and some live in constant fear. To bring criminals to justice[10], the officers of the law are always on the move[11].

Workers and others who seek advancement in their careers attend educational institutions which are open till late in the night. Hundreds of them sit for various examinations every year. The facilities[12] and opportunities that the people in the city have to further their studies and increase their knowledge of human affairs are indeed many. As a result, the people of the city are usually better informed than those of the village, where even a newspaper is sometimes difficult to get.

The city could, therefore, be described as a place of ceaseless activity. Here, the drama of life is enacted every day.

NEW WORDS:

1. flock [flɔk] (v) *lũ lượt kéo đến; tụ tập, quây quần*
2. throb [θrɔb] (v) *rộn ràng, rộn lên; rung động*
3. sight-seer ['sait,si:ə] (n) *người đi tham quan*
4. transact [træn'zækt] (v) *thực hiện, tiến hành; giải quyết*
5. means of transport [mi:nz əv 'trænspɔ:t] *phương tiện vận chuyển*
6. commit [kə'mit] (v) *phạm phải*
7. misfortune [mis'fɔ:tʃn] (n) *sự rủi ro, sự bất hạnh; điều không may*
8. descend upon [di'send ə'pɔn] (v) *ập xuống bất ngờ, đến bất ngờ*
9. greed [gri:d] (n) *tính tham lam*
10. to bring s.o. to justice [briŋ tə 'dʒʌstis] *đem ai ra tòa, truy tố ai tại tòa*
11. on the move [ɔn đə mu:v] *di chuyển*
12. facility [fə'siliti] (n) *điều kiện thuận lợi, phương tiện dễ dàng*

Cuộc sống ở thành thị

Cuộc sống ở thành thị rất nhộn nhịp. Từ tờ mờ sáng hàng trăm người ùa ra khỏi nhà như đàn kiến vỡ tổ. Chẳng bao lâu sau đường phố đông nghẹt xe cộ. Các cửa hàng và văn phòng mở cửa. Học sinh hối hả cắp sách đến trường và một ngày làm việc bắt đầu. Giờ đây thành phố hoạt động nhộn nhịp và đầy ắp tiếng huyên náo. Hàng trăm người ngoạn cảnh, du khách và nhiều người khác viếng thăm những thắng cảnh của thành phố trong khi các doanh nhân từ nhiều nơi trên thế giới đến trao đổi công việc làm ăn.

Trời về chiều, những văn phòng và trường học bắt đầu đóng cửa. Nhiều cửa hàng cũng đóng cửa. Lúc này diễn ra một cuộc đổ xô đón xe buýt và các phương tiện vận chuyển khác. Dường như mọi người đều vội vã về nhà.

Kết quả của sự vội vã này là nhiều tai nạn xảy ra. Những ai chưa từng đến thành phố cảm thấy khó mà đi lại vào giờ này. Tuy vậy, không bao lâu sau một số khu vực của thành phố như ngừng hoạt động. Những nơi này thường là các trung tâm kinh doanh.

Đêm xuống, một hình thức hoạt động khác lại bắt đầu. Đường phố tràn ngập ánh đèn màu. Bầu không khí dịu xuống và cuộc sống trở nên

thư thả hơn. Giờ đây người ta tìm đến những thú vui giải trí. Nhiều người đến rạp chiếu bóng, công viên và câu lạc bộ, trong khi những người khác ở nhà xem ti vi và nghe đài phát thanh. Có người đi thăm bạn bè và bà con. Có người dành thì giờ đọc sách và tạp chí. Những người quan tâm đến chính trị bàn luận về những sự kiện chính trị nóng hổi. Cũng trong thời gian này, hàng trăm vụ trộm cướp diễn ra. Trộm cướp chờ đêm xuống để hoạt động, và vận rủi sẽ ập xuống nhiều người. Chỉ vì lòng tham của một số ít người mà nhiều người đã bị giết, và nhiều người khác phải sống trong cảnh sợ hãi triền miên. Để đưa tội phạm ra trước công lý, các viên chức luật pháp luôn luôn sẵn sàng hành động.

Người lao động và những người muốn tiến triển trên con đường công danh sự nghiệp của mình thì tham gia các lớp học ban đêm. Mỗi năm có hàng trăm người trong số họ tham dự vào nhiều kỳ thi khác nhau. Các phương tiện và cơ hội dành cho người dân thành thị để mở rộng học hỏi và gia tăng kiến thức nhân sinh thực sự rất phong phú. Do đó người dân ở thành phố luôn nắm bắt thông tin nhanh hơn người dân vùng nông thôn, nơi mà có khi ngay đến một tờ báo cũng khó kiếm.

Tóm lại thành thị có thể nói là nơi của những hoạt động không ngừng nghỉ. Chính tại đây, vở kịch cuộc đời tái diễn mỗi ngày.

2. LIVING IN A MULTIRACIAL COMMUNITY

Living in a community where there are people of various races[1] could be a rewarding and an exciting experience. Such a community is like a small world with many types and races of people in it.

Everyone, young or old, enjoys listening to stories about people in other lands. We read books and newspapers to learn about the habits, customs and beliefs[2] of people who do not belong to our race, but when we live in a community composed[3] of many races, we have the opportunity to meet and talk with people or various races. We can learn about their customs and beliefs directly from them. In this way, we have a better understanding of their ways of life. For example, in Singapore and Malaysia, which are known as multi-racial[4] countries, Malays, Chinese, Indians and others have lived together for several decades[5]. They have learnt a lot about the cultures of one another, more than what they could have learnt by reading books or newspapers. By living together, they have also absorbed[6] many of the habits of one another to their common benefit.

Further, living in a multi-racial community teaches us how to respect the views and beliefs of people of other races. We learn to be tolerant and to understand and appreciate the peculiarities[7] of those who are not of our race. In this way, we learn to live in peace and harmony with[8] foreigners whose ways of life are different from ours in several respects. We become less suspicious of strangers and foreigners.

The relationship that develops among the people from common understanding in a multi-racial community makes life in such a community very exciting. Any celebration of any race becomes a celebration of all the other races. Thus, there is a lot of fun and excitement during every celebration. In this way, better understanding is promoted[9] among the peoples of the world. Through each of the races of the people in a multi-racial community, we come to know about their respective countries. For example, through the Chinese and the Indians in Malaysia or Singapore we have come to know much about China and India. As a result, we have a better understanding of the peoples of China and India as a whole[10].

It could therefore be said that life in a multi-racial community teaches us many useful lessons in human relations.

NEW WORDS:

1. race [reis] (n) *chủng tộc, giống người*
2. belief [bi'li:f] (n) *tín ngưỡng*
3. composed [kəm'pəʊzd] (adj) *gồm có, bao gồm*
4. multi-racial [mʌlti'reiʃl] (adj) *đa chủng tộc, nhiều chủng tộc*
5. decade ['dekeid] (n) *thời kỳ mười năm, thập kỷ*
6. absorb [əb'sɔ:b] (v) *hấp thu*
7. peculiarity [pi,kju:li'ærəti] (n) *tính chất riêng, nét riêng biệt, nét đặc biệt*
8. in peace and harmony with [in pi:s ənd 'hɑ:məni wiđ] *trong hoà bình và hoà thuận*
9. promote [prə'məʊt] (v) *nâng cao; xúc tiến, đẩy mạnh*
10. as a whole [əz ə həʊl] *nói chung, toàn bộ*

Sống trong một cộng đồng đa chủng tộc

Sống trong một cộng đồng mà các cư dân thuộc nhiều chủng tộc khác nhau có thể là một trải nghiệm thú vị và bổ ích. Một cộng đồng như thế cũng giống như một thế giới thu nhỏ gồm nhiều sắc tộc và kiểu tính cách.

Tất cả mọi người, dù già hay trẻ, đều thích nghe chuyện kể về những người dân xứ khác. Chúng ta đọc sách, báo để biết về những thói quen, phong tục và tín ngưỡng của các dân tộc khác, nhưng khi chúng ta sống trong một cộng đồng đa sắc tộc, chúng ta có cơ hội gặp gỡ và trò chuyện với người dân thuộc nhiều chủng tộc khác nhau. Chúng ta có thể trực tiếp học hỏi về những phong tục và tín ngưỡng của họ. Bằng cách này, chúng ta có thể hiểu nhiều hơn về lối sống của họ. Chẳng hạn như tại Singapore và Malaysia, những nước được xem là đa sắc tộc, người Mã Lai, Trung Quốc, Ấn Độ và các sắc dân khác đã chung sống với nhau qua vài thập kỷ. Họ đã học hỏi rất nhiều về văn hóa của nhau mà việc đọc sách báo không thể sánh bằng. Qua việc chung sống với nhau, họ cũng đã tiếp thu nhiều tập quán của nhau để mang lại lợi ích chung cho cộng đồng.

Thêm vào đó, cuộc sống trong một cộng đồng đa sắc tộc dạy cho ta biết tôn trọng quan điểm và tín ngưỡng của dân tộc khác. Chúng ta biết khoan dung, hiểu biết và đánh giá cao nét đặc thù của những người không thuộc chủng tộc mình. Bằng cách này, chúng ta học chung sống trong hòa bình và hòa thuận với những người ngoại quốc mà lối sống của họ khác chúng ta trên vài phương diện. Chúng ta trở nên ít nghi ngại những người lạ và người nước ngoài.

Mối quan hệ nảy sinh giữa các dân tộc từ sự hiểu biết chung trong một cộng đồng đa sắc tộc làm cho cuộc sống trong cộng đồng như thế trở nên hết sức thú vị. Bất kỳ lễ kỷ niệm của một dân tộc nào cũng trở thành lễ kỷ niệm của tất cả các dân tộc khác. Nhờ vậy có rất nhiều niềm vui thích và thú vị trong mỗi một dịp lễ hội. Bằng cách này, sự hiểu biết lẫn nhau giữa các dân tộc trên thế giới được đẩy mạnh. Thông qua mỗi một dân tộc trong cộng đồng đa chủng tộc, chúng ta dần dần hiểu biết về quốc gia mà họ là đại diện. Chẳng hạn, thông qua người Trung Quốc và Ấn Độ ở Malaysia hay Singapore, chúng ta biết nhiều về Trung Hoa và Ấn Độ. Vì vậy chúng ta hiểu nhiều hơn về tổng thể dân tộc và đất nước Trung Hoa và Ấn Độ.

Vì thế có thể nói rằng cuộc sống ở một cộng đồng đa chủng tộc dạy cho ta nhiều bài học hữu ích về mối quan hệ của con người.

3. A VISIT TO A FAMOUS CITY

A few months ago my father and I visited Singapore, one of the most famous cities in Asia.

Singapore, a small island, lies at the southern and of West Malaysia. A long and narrow piece of land joins Singapore with Johore Hahru, the southern-most town of West Malaysia. Singapore is now an independent state.

The city of Singapore is extremely beautiful. It is well known for its centres of business and other activities. There are many places of interest[1] such as the Tiger Balm Garden, the Botanical Gardens and Raffles Museum. There are also many important centres of learning such as the University of Singapore, Science Centre, the Nanyang University and the Polytechnic. Being a famous city, hundreds of people come every day from various parts of the world to do business or to enjoy the sights of the city. Singapore therefore has large and beautiful airports and its harbours are full of ships.

There are many night schools where people who cannot go to the day schools for some reason or other can continue their studies. And, the government of Singapore is still doing its best to make further improvements in the city for the benefit of the people.

During my stay in Singapore, I went out every day with my father to see the beautiful and interesting places and things in the city. One day we went to the Tiger Balm Garden where I saw several statues of people, animals and other strange creature[2] beautifully made and kept. The sea near this garden makes this a pleasant place to visit. We spent almost half of the day at this place.

Another day we visited the museum where I saw hundreds of curious[3] things preserved for scholars[4] and others. It was indeed an education to see all those things. There is so much to learn here that every visit by any person is sure to add to his knowledge.

I also visited some of the harbours and saw the large ships anchored[5] there. The sight of the ships aroused a desire[6] in me to cross the oceans and go round the world. I was indeed deeply impressed[7] by the activities at the harbour.

Then every night, I went round the town and visited some of the parks and other places of interest. The numerous lights[8] and the constant

stream of traffic kept the city alive. I visited a few of the cinemas as well. In short, I enjoyed every moment of my stay in this famous city of Singapore.

NEW WORDS:

1 places of interest [pleisiz əv 'intrəst] *những vùng đáng chú ý, những vùng thú vị*

2. strange creatures [streindʒ 'kri:tʃə] *những sinh vật lạ*

3. curious ['kjuəriəs] (adj) *ham hiểu biết; tò mò, hiếu kỳ*

4. anchor ['æŋkə] (v) *bỏ neo, thả neo*

5. arouse a desire [ə'raʊz ə di'zaiə] *gợi lên sự khao khát*

6. impress [im'pres] (v) *gây ấn tượng*

7. numerous lights ['nju:mərəs laits] *nhiều ánh đèn*

8. scholar ['skɔlə] (n) *thành phần trí thức*

Thăm viếng một thành phố nổi tiếng

Cách đây vài tháng, bố tôi và tôi đi tham quan Singapore, một trong những thành phố nổi tiếng nhất châu Á.

Singapore là một hòn đảo nhỏ nằm ở phía nam và thuộc miền Trung Tây Malaysia. Một dải đất nhỏ và hẹp nối liền Singapore với Johore Bahru, thành phố cực nam của vùng Tây Malayxia. Singapore hiện nay là một quốc gia độc lập.

Thành phố Singapore cực kỳ diễm lệ. Nó nổi tiếng bởi những trung tâm buôn bán và các hoạt động khác. Có nhiều thắng cảnh như Vườn Tiger Balm, Vườn sinh học và Viện Bảo tàng Raffles. Ngoài ra còn có nhiều trung tâm nghiên cứu quan trọng như Đại học tổng hợp Singapore, Trung tâm khoa học, Đại học Nanyang và Đại học Bách khoa. Vì là một thành phố nổi tiếng nên hàng ngày có hàng trăm người từ các nước khác nhau trên thế giới đến để làm việc hay chiêm ngưỡng cảnh quan thành phố. Vì thế Singapore có những sân bay to và đẹp, còn những hải cảng của nó lúc nào cũng tấp nập tàu bè.

Có những lớp học ban đêm cho những người không thể đến trường vào ban ngày vì một lý do nào đó để họ tiếp tục học tập. Và hiện nay chính phủ Singapore đang làm hết sức mình để ngày càng phát triển thành phố vì lợi ích cho người dân Singapore.

Trong khi dừng chân ở Singapore, hàng ngày tôi ra phố dạo chơi với bố và ngắm nhìn cảnh vật thú vị và đẹp đẽ của thành phố. Một ngày nọ tôi đến vườn Tiger Balm nơi tôi thấy có vài bức tượng người, nhiều loài thú và những tạo vật lạ kỳ được tạo tác và gìn giữ rất công phu. Chúng tôi ở đó gần nửa ngày.

Chúng tôi cũng tham quan viện bảo tàng, ở đó tôi thấy hàng trăm thứ quý giá được giữ gìn cho các học giả và những người khác. Thật là một cơ hội học tập khi được xem tất cả các vật này. Ở đây có rất nhiều điều để học hỏi đến nỗi bất cứ người nào đến thăm viện bảo tàng cũng có thêm kiến thức cho mình.

Tôi cũng đi thăm vài hải cảng và thấy những con tàu lớn thả neo ở đó. Cảnh tượng tàu bè khuấy động trong tôi ước muốn vượt đại dương đi vòng quanh thế giới. Các hoạt động ở bến cảng thật sự gây cho tôi ấn tượng sâu sắc.

Rồi mỗi đêm tôi đều đi quanh thành phố viếng thăm những công viên và thắng cảnh khác. Vô số ánh đèn và dòng xe cộ bất tận làm thành phố rất sống động. Tôi cũng đến thăm một vài rạp chiếu bóng. Tóm lại tôi yêu thích mỗi khoảnh khắc tôi sống tại thành phố Singopore nổi tiếng này.

4. MODERN INVENTIONS

Modern inventions have made life more comfortable[1] than what it was before. More and more new things are being made in all countries throughout the world to make life even more comfortable.

In the past men had great difficulty in[2] ploughing their lands to grow food. But, today, giant[3] machines are used to plough[4] thousands of acres of land. As a result[5], more food can be grown in a shorter time than was possible before. Food grown in one country is sent to another country where it is needed badly. To carry the food motor-vehicles, steam-ships[6] and various other means of transport have been invented. Shortage of food[7] in one place no longer causes anxiety[8] as it can be brought from another place within a very short time.

The invention[9] of the means of transport has also made it possible for people to work in places miles away, and children can attend schools in distant places. In the past, this was not possible. The children of today are therefore better educated than those of the past. Invention of the

means of transport has also increased human activity. A man can now go to several places, and do a variety of things in a day's time.

Other inventions like the radio and the telephone have also contributed much to human progress[10]. The radio keeps us informed about developments[11] in other parts of the world. We do not have to travel to know what is happening in places away from our homes. The telephone too is a convenient means of knowing about others, miles away. It helps in business transactions by reducing time and travel. A businessman in one town can talk to another in another town, several miles away, to do some important business. In all these ways, people are able to do many things without much loss of time[12].

In the same way, every invention has helped to increase our comforts. Television, for example, now makes it possible for people to stay at home and enjoy. At the same time, however, modern inventions have caused many deaths and much sorrow[13] to many people. Motor vehicles and other machines have killed hundreds of people. Many have lost their hands or legs, and accidents continue to occur in every increasing numbers. Yet modern inventions have made the world what it is today.

NEW WORDS:

1. comfortable ['kʌmfətəbl] (adj) *tiện lợi, đủ tiện nghi; ấm cúng; dễ chịu, thoải mái*
2. have great difficulty in [haev greit 'difikəlti in] *gặp nhiều khó khăn trong việc*
3. giant ['dʒaiənt] (adj) *khổng lồ, phi thường*
4. plough [plaʊ] (v) *cày, bừa, xới*
5. as a result [æz ə ri'zʌlt] *kết quả là*
6. steam-ship ['sti:mʃip] (n) *tàu chạy bằng hơi nước*
7. shortage of food ['ʃɔ:tidʒ əv fu:d] *sự thiếu thốn thực phẩm*
8. anxiety [æŋ'zaiəti] (n) *mối lo âu; mối băn khoăn; sự lo lắng*
9. invention [in'venʃn] (n) *sự phát minh, sự sáng chế*
10. human progress ['hju:mən 'prəʊgres] *sự phát triển của nhân loại*
11. development [di'veləpmənt] (n) *sự phát triển*
12. without much loss or time [wi'ðaʊt mʌtʃ lɔs əv taim] *không mất nhiều thời gian*
13. sorrow (n) ['sɔrəʊ] (n) *sự đau khổ, sự buồn phiền; nỗi đau buồn*

Những phát minh hiện đại

Những phát minh hiện đại đã làm cho đời sống dễ chịu hơn trước. Càng ngày càng có nhiều vật dụng mới được sản xuất ở tất cả các nước trên thế giới làm cho cuộc sống thoải mái hơn.

Trước đây con người vấp phải khó khăn trong việc cày đất để trồng trọt. Nhưng ngày nay những máy móc khổng lồ được sử dụng để cày hàng ngàn mẫu đất. Vì thế người ta có thể thu hoạch được nhiều thực phẩm hơn chỉ trong một thời gian ngắn so với trước đây. Thực phẩm trồng ở một nước được gửi tới những nước khác có nhu cầu. Những xe gắn động cơ, tàu thủy hơi nước và các phương tiện giao thông khác đã được phát minh để chuyên chở thực phẩm. Sự thiếu thốn thực phẩm ở một nơi nào đó không còn là mối lo ngại nữa vì người ta có thể mang thực phẩm từ nơi này sang nơi khác trong một thời gian rất ngắn.

Những phát minh khác như máy thu thanh và điện thoại cũng góp phần vào sự tiến bộ của nhân loại. Máy thu thanh giúp chúng ta nắm được thông tin về những sự phát triển của các quốc gia trên thế giới. Chúng ta không phải đi đến những nơi xa xôi để biết diễn biến tình hình ở đó. Điện thoại cũng là một phương tiện thuận lợi để biết những gì xảy ra ở nơi khác cách đó hàng dặm. Nó rút ngắn thời gian và giảm việc đi lại trong kinh doanh giao dịch. Doanh gia của một thành phố có thể nói chuyện với đối tác làm ăn ở một thành phố khác cách đó vài dặm để trao đổi về một thương vụ quan trọng. Ngày nay với những phát minh hiện đại người ta có thể làm nhiều chuyện mà không phải mất thời gian.

Mỗi một phát minh đều góp phần làm gia tăng sự tiện nghi trong đời sống chúng ta. Chẳng hạn như ngày nay chúng ta có thể ở nhà xem vô tuyến truyền hình. Tuy nhiên cùng lúc đó, những phát minh hiện đại đã gây chết chóc và đau buồn cho mọi người. Xe gắn máy và những máy móc khác đã giết chết hàng trăm người. Nhiều người mất tay hoặc mất chân và tai nạn liên tục xuất hiện theo con số ngày càng gia tăng. Tuy nhiên cũng chính những phát minh hiện đại đã làm nên thế giới ngày nay.

5. ADVENTURE IN A FOREST

A few months ago some of my class-mates[1] and I made a trip to Borneo with our Geography teacher to seek adventure in the forests of Borneo.

Soon after our arrival in Borneo, we made all the preparations and began our journey to the forest early one morning. After miles of travel

through the forest, we arrived at an open space. As it was already late in the evening, we decided to erect[2] our tent[3] and spend the night there. Night soon fell on this place and we lighted our oil lamp.

Feeling tired, we had our meal early and went to bed. There was silence all around; but soon, creatures that love the night world became active. The forest was now full of frightful noise. Breaking through this noise, came another noise, more frightening; the noise of native drums. And as the minutes slipped by, it seemed to come nearer and nearer. We all froze into[4] deathly silence[5]. The tension mounted rapidly, but still nothing happened. Then, as suddenly as it began, the noise stopped. We were alarmed. We were now sure that some natives has seen us and we would he attacked. In such a situation, we could not sleep. Death might come at any time.

Minutes lengthened to hours; but in our anxiety to preserve our lives, we hardly noticed the coming of day. Then, all of a sudden[6], we found ourselves surrounded by half-naked natives[7] with spears in their hands. Surprised and terrified, we remained speechless[8] for some time. Then, one of them, presumably[9] their leader, uttered a word. He seemed eager to talk, but there was no language in which we could understand each other.

Our teacher, who is always full of ideas, then offered a cigarette to the man who uttered[10] the word. The man, however, seemed to suspect our teacher's intentions. He refused to accept the cigarette. Our teacher then put it between his own lips and after lighting it, began to puff[11] at it. The man now made a sign which showed that he would not mind having a cigarette after all. At once our teacher gave him one and helped him to light it. As he was puffing at it, we observed signs of satisfaction[12]. Realising that in this way we could become friends, our teacher gave him a few more cigarettes. The man was so delighted at this demonstration[13] of friendship that he uttered some words, and soon all those who came with him, began to dance and sing.

After they had stopped singing, they made several gestures[14] which showed that they had enjoyed our company. They left us after about an hour with smiles on their faces. Our journey into the interior[15] of Borneo was indeed an adventure.

1. classmate ['klɑ:smeit] (n) *bạn cùng lớp*
2. erect [i'rekt] (v) *dựng (lều)*
3. tent [tent] (n) *lều, rạp, tăng*
4. freeze [fri:z] (v) *đông lại (vì lạnh), lạnh cứng; thấy ớn lạnh, thấy ghê ghê*
5. silence ['sailidʒ] (n) *sự im lặng; sự nín thinh*
6. all of a sudden [ɔ:l əv ə 'sʌdn] *bất thình lình; một cách bất ngờ*
7. half-naked native [hɑ:f 'neikid 'neitiv] *thổ dân để trần nửa người*
8. remain speechless [ri'mein 'spi:tʃlis] *lặng đi không thốt nổi một tiếng*
9. presumably [pri'zju:məbli] (adv) *có thể đoán chừng là; có lẽ; hẳn là, chắc là*
10. utter ['ʌtə] (v) *nói, nói ra; phát biểu, bày tỏ*
11. puff [pʌf] (v) *hút bập bập, hút từng hơi ngắn (thuốc lá)*
12. signs of satisfation [sainz əv,sætis'fækʃn] *những dấu hiệu của sự thoả mãn*
13. demonstration [,deməns'treiʃn] (n) *sự thể hiện, sự biểu hiện*
14. gesture ['dʒestʃə] (n) *điệu bộ; cử chỉ*
15. interior [in'tiəriə] (n) *nội địa*

Cuộc phiêu lưu trong rừng

Cách đây vài tháng tôi và vài người bạn cùng lớp đến Borneo với thầy giáo địa lý để phiêu lưu trong khu rừng của Borneo.

Ngay khi đến Borneo, chúng tôi sửa soạn đồ đạc và bắt đầu chuyến du ngoạn tới khu rừng vào một buổi sáng sớm. Sau khi đi hàng dặm trong rừng, chúng tôi đến một khoảng đất trống. Vì trời đã tối chúng tôi quyết định căng lều và ngủ đêm ở đó. Chẳng bao lâu sau, bóng đêm hoàn toàn bao trùm lên khu rừng và chúng tôi thắp sáng bằng đèn dầu.

Cảm thấy mỏi mệt, chúng tôi ăn sớm và đi ngủ. Xung quanh rất im lặng, nhưng chẳng bao lâu các sinh vật ban đêm bắt đầu hoạt động. Khu rừng giờ đây tràn ngập những tiếng động ghê sợ. Tiếng động này đi qua tiếng động khác lại đến, ghê rợn hơn: tiếng trống của người bản xứ. Và từng phút trôi qua, tiếng trống như càng gần hơn Tất cả chúng tôi ớn lạnh trong sự im lặng chết chóc. Sự căng thẳng dâng cao, nhưng vẫn không có gì xảy ra. Rồi cũng đột ngột như khi bắt đầu, tiếng ồn ào chấm dứt. Chúng tôi được báo động. Giờ đây chúng tôi biết rằng những người

bản xứ đã nhìn thấy chúng tôi và rằng chúng tôi sẽ bị tấn công. Trong tình cảnh như thế chúng tôi không thể nào ngủ được. Cái chết có thể đến bất cứ lúc nào.

Mỗi phút trôi qua dài như một giờ; nhưng trong sự lo sợ bảo tồn sinh mạng của mình chúng tôi hầu như không để ý rằng ngày đã đến. Thế rồi thật bất ngờ, chúng tôi thấy mình bị bao vây bởi những thổ dân chỉ mặc quần áo che kín một nửa thân thể cầm giáo trong tay, Rồi một người trong số đó, có lẽ là thủ lĩnh, bắt đầu nói. Anh ta có vẻ nói rất hăm hở nhưng không có ngôn ngữ nào để chúng tôi hiểu nhau.

Thầy giáo của chúng tôi lúc nào cũng có sáng kiến liền đưa cho người đàn ông đang nói một điếu thuốc lá. Tuy nhiên, dường như anh ta nghi ngờ ý định của thầy giáo. Anh ta không nhận điếu thuốc lá. Thầy giáo liền đặt điếu thuốc vào môi rồi mồi lửa và bắt đầu hút. Lúc bấy giờ người đàn ông mới ra hiệu rằng anh ta sẵn lòng hút một điếu thuốc. Nhận thấy chúng tôi có thể làm bạn với người thổ dân bằng cách này, thầy giáo chúng tôi biếu cho anh ta vài điếu thuốc nữa. Người đàn ông rất hài lòng với sự bày tỏ hữu nghị đó, anh ta nói gì đó, rồi tất cả những người đi theo anh ta bắt đầu nhảy múa.

Sau khi các thổ dân ngừng hát, họ ra hiệu rằng họ rất thích làm bạn với chúng tôi. Khoảng một giờ sau đó họ tạm biệt chúng tôi với nụ cười trên gương mặt. Chuyến du ngoạn của chúng tôi vào nội địa Borneo thật sự là một cuộc phiêu lưu.

6. AN UNUSUAL OPPORTUNITY I HAD

Seldom does one have opportunity of seeing a fight between a tiger and a crocodile. I, however, had this opportunity one day when I went with my father into a forest, in search of some wild plants.

I had never been to a forest before. Therefore, whatever I saw in that forest interested me greatly. I looked at the rich vegetation all round as well as the variety of colourful flowers and birds, large and small. I saw the activity of some of the wild creatures, such as snakes, squirrels and insects. Occasionally, I heard the cry of some strange animal in pain, perhaps while being eaten by a larger animal. I also heard some rustling noises[1] in the undergrowth; but I was not afraid of all these. Such things, I knew, were natural to the forest.

My father whose only interest was in the type of plants he wanted for my mother's garden, however, paid little attention to the sounds and

movements in these green depths[2]. He continued his search for more and more of those plants until we reached one of the banks of a large river in the forest. There we stopped for a while to enjoy the sights around.

The scene was peaceful. Then, to our surprises and horror, we saw a tiger on the other side of the river. It was moving quietly and cautiously[3] towards the water for a drink. A hush[4] fell upon the jungle. My father and I were now too frightened to move from there.

However, as the tiger put its mouth into the river there was a sudden swirl[5] of the waters, and before the tiger could rush out, it was seized by a huge crocodile. The tiger's howl[6] of pain and anger filled[7] me and my father with terror[8]. Yet we waited there to see the end of the struggle between these two lords of the forest and the river. The crocodile had the advantage from the beginning. It used all its strength to pull the tiger deeper into the water, and the tiger too fought desperately to free itself from the jaws of the merciless[9] reptiles[10]; but the tiger soon gave up the struggle and all was quiet again. I now felt pity for the tiger which had died just to slake its thirst[11].

Then, my father reminded me of the narrow escape that we had ourselves had. If the tiger had been on this side of the river, one of us might have died in the way the tiger did, a victim of animal appetite. And as we were returning home, I began to think of the struggle for life and savagery[12] that lurks[13] beneath peaceful scenes.

NEW WORDS:

1 rustling noise ['rʌsliŋ nɔiz] (n) *tiếng động sột soạt, xào xạc*

2. in these green depths *trong sâu thẳm của khu rừng, trong cùng thẳm của khu rừng*

3. cautiously ['kɔ:ʃəsli] (adv) *cẩn thận, thận trọng*

4. hush [hʌʃ] (n) *sự im lặng*

5. swirl [swə:l] (n) *chỗ nước xoáy, chỗ nước cuộn*

6. howl [haʊl] (n) *tiếng rú (đau đớn)*

7. fill [fil] (v) *làm tràn ngập, làm đầy*

8. terror ['terə] (n) *sự kinh hoàng; nỗi khiếp sợ*

9. merciless ['mə:silis] (adj) *nhẫn tâm, tàn nhẫn*

10. reptile ['reptail] (n) *loài bò sát*

11 slake one's thirst [sleik θə:st] (v) *làm cho đỡ khát, giải khát*

12. savagery ['sævidʒəri] (n) *sự tàn bạo, sự độc ác; hành vi tàn bạo, hành vi độc ác*

13. lurk [lə:k] (v) *ngấm ngầm; ẩn nấp, núp, trốn*

Một cơ hội hiếm hoi tôi đã gặp

Rất hiếm khi người ta có dịp xem một trận đánh nhau giữa một con hổ và một con cá sấu. Tuy nhiên tôi đã từng có cơ hội này vào một ngày nọ, khi cùng với bố tôi vào rừng để tìm cây dại.

Trước đó, tôi chưa bao giờ bước chân vào rừng. Vì thế bất cứ điều gì tôi thấy trong khu rừng đó cũng làm cho tôi thích thú. Tôi nhìn những loại thảo mộc sum xuê ở khắp nơi cũng như những loại hoa cỏ và chim muông lớn nhỏ sặc sỡ đủ màu. Tôi thấy những loài thú hoang như rắn sóc và côn trùng đang hoạt động. Thỉnh thoảng tôi nghe tiếng kêu của một loài thú lạ bị thương, có lẽ là bị một con thú lớn hơn ăn thịt. Tôi còn nghe thấy tiếng xào xạc của những lùm cây thấp; nhưng tôi không sợ. Tôi biết những điều này là phải có trong một khu rừng.

Cha tôi chỉ quan tâm đến những loại cây mà ông muốn trồng trong vườn của mẹ nên ít để ý tới những âm thanh và hoạt động trong khu rừng rậm sâu thẳm này. Ông mải mê tìm thêm nhiều cây dại cho đến khi chúng tôi đến bên bờ một con sông lớn trong rừng. Chúng tôi dừng lại đó một chốc để ngắm cảnh vật xung quanh.

Khung cảnh rất thanh bình. Thế rồi hết sức ngạc nhiên và sợ hãi, chúng tôi thấy một con hổ bên kia bờ sông. Nó đang lặng lẽ và thận trọng tiến tới để uống nước. Im lặng bao trùm lên khu rừng rậm. Cả cha tôi và tôi đều kinh sợ đứng chôn chân một chỗ.

Tuy nhiên, khi con hổ cúi sâu xuống mặt sông, bất ngờ một xoáy nước xông lên và, không kịp chạy thoát, con hổ đã bị một con cá sấu khổng lồ tóm chặt. Tiếng rú đau đớn và giận dữ của con hổ làm tôi và cha tôi hết sức kinh hoàng. Nhưng chúng tôi vẫn đứng để xem kết cục của trận quyết chiến giữa hai loài chúa tể của rừng xanh và sông nước.

Con cá sấu có lợi thế ngay từ lúc đầu. Nó dùng hết sức kéo con hổ xuống nước, và con hổ cũng chiến đấu một cách tuyệt vọng để thoát khỏi hàm con cá sấu tàn bạo. Nhưng chẳng bao lâu sau con hổ thua cuộc và im lặng lại trùm lên khu rừng. Lúc đó tôi cảm thấy đáng thương cho con hổ bị chết chỉ vì khát nước.

Thế rồi cha tôi nhắc tôi nhớ đến sự thoát chết mong manh vừa qua. Nếu con hổ ở bờ sông bên này, hẳn là một trong hai chúng tôi đã chết

như con hổ, nạn nhân của loài thú khát máu. Và trên suốt quãng đường về nhà, tôi bắt đầu nghĩ về sự đấu tranh để sinh tồn và sự bạo tàn ẩn sâu dưới cái vẻ thanh bình của cuộc sống.

7. THE VALUE OF LIBRARIES

A good library is an ocean of information, whose boundaries continue to extend with the endless contribution of the numerous streams of knowledge. Thus, it has a peculiar fascination[1] for scholars, and all those whose thirst for knowledge is instable[2].

The usefulness of libraries in the spread of knowledge has been proved through the years. The field of knowledge is so extensive and life is so brief that even the most avid[3] reader can never expect to absorb it all. Those who have a love for knowledge, therefore, try to master only a small fraction[4] of it. Even this requires reading of hundreds of books, cheap and expensive, new and old. But few people are able to buy all the books on the subject in which they wish to attain proficiency[5]. It is therefore necessary for them to visit a good library, where they can read a great variety of books on the subject they love. Besides, many old and valuable books on certain subjects are found only in a good library. Even the original manuscript[6] of an author, who died several years ago, can be found in it, sometimes.

Today, men everywhere have discovered the benefits of learning. More and more books are being written to extend human knowledge and experience. Governments and individuals throughout the world are, therefore, opening more and more libraries to enable people to read as many books as possible. Libraries have been opened even in the remotest regions of the earth, so that people who are unable to buy books from the towns can still gain access to the various sources of knowledge. Mobile libraries serve the people in various parts of the earth.

The importance of libraries, however, is felt most acutely[7] by students in schools and universities, where most students are engaged in deep studies. The number of books that a student has to study, especially at a university, is so large that unless he comes from a rich family, he can hardly buy them all. Besides, many of the books may not be available in the book-shops within his reach. It is therefore to his advantage to visit a good library.

Some people even have their own private libraries in which they spend their leisure, reading the books that they have collected over the years, and drive great intellectual[8] benefit[9] and pleasure.

In short, libraries have contributed so much to the extension of knowledge that they have become almost indispensable[10] to all literate men[11].

NEW WORDS:

1. fascination [,fæsi'neiʃn] (n) *sự thôi miên; sự mê hoặc, sự quyến rũ*
2. instable [in'steibl] (adj) *không ổn định*
3. avid ['ævid] (adj) *khao khát, thèm khát, thèm thuồng*
4. fraction ['frækʃn] (n) *phần nhỏ, miếng nhỏ*
5. to attain proficiency [ə'tein prə'fiʃnsi] (v) *trở nên thành thạo, giỏi giang*
6. manuscript ['mænjuskript] (n) *bản viết tay*
7. acutely [ə'kju:tli] (adv) *sâu sắc*
8. intellectual [,inti'lektjuəl] (adj) *(thuộc) trí óc; (thuộc) trí tuệ*
9. to drive great intelectual benefit *theo đuổi lợi ích tri thức lớn*
10. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *tuyệt đối cần thiết; không thể thiếu được*
11. literate men ['litərit men] (n) *những người có học*

Giá trị của thư viện

Một thư viện lớn là một đại dương của thông tin mà ranh giới của nó tiếp tục mở rộng với sự đóng góp vô tận những dòng suối tri thức không bao giờ ngừng lại. Vì vậy nó có sức quyến rũ đặc biệt đối với các học giả và những người khát khao chân trời kiến thức.

Sự hữu dụng của thư viện trong việc truyền bá kiến thức đã được minh chứng hàng bao năm qua. Cánh đồng của tri thức thì quá rộng và cuộc đời thì quá ngắn cho nên ngay cả những độc giả tham lam nhất cũng đừng bao giờ mong rằng sẽ đọc được tất cả. Vì thế, những người yêu mến tri thức chỉ nắm vững một phần nào đó mà thôi. Mà chỉ thế thôi cũng phải đọc hàng trăm quyển sách, rẻ và đắt, mới và cũ. Nhưng ít ai có thể mua tất cả những quyển sách về chuyên môn mà họ muốn thành thạo. Vì thế họ cần phải đến thư viện nơi họ có thể đọc thật nhiều sách về chủ đề yêu thích. Hơn nữa nhiều quyển sách quí giá chỉ có trong thư

viện. Đôi khi cả một bản thảo nguyên gốc của một tác giả qua đời cách đây vài năm cũng có thể tìm thấy trong thư viện.

Ngày nay con người ở khắp nơi đã phát hiện ra lợi ích của việc học tập.Ngày càng có nhiều cuốn sách được viết để mở rộng kiến thức và kinh nghiệm con người. Vì thế các chính phủ và cá nhân trên thế giới không ngừng mở những thư viện giúp người ta đọc càng nhiều sách càng tốt. Thư viện cũng xuất hiện tại ngay cả ở những vùng xa xôi nhất của trái đất để những ai không thể mua sách từ thành phố vẫn có thể tiếp thu những nguồn kiến thức đa dạng. Những thư viện di động phục vụ người đọc sách ở mọi nơi trên thế giới.

Tuy nhiên tầm quan trọng của thư viện là dễ thấy nhất ở sinh viên, học sinh các trường phổ thông và đại học, nơi mà phần lớn học sinh luôn bận rộn nghiên cứu. Con số những quyển sách mà một sinh viên phải nghiên cứu, đặc biệt ở trường đại học là khá lớn đến nỗi gần như không thể mua hết được, trừ khi gia đình của anh ta hết sức giàu có. Hơn nữa, nhiều quyển sách có thể không có sẵn trong hiệu sách để anh ta mua. Vì vậy đến thư viện rất là tiện lợi.

Một số người có thư viện riêng để khi nhàn rỗi đọc những quyển sách họ đã sưu tập hàng bao năm trời và mang về niềm vui và nguồn tri thức to lớn.

Tóm lại, thư viện đã đóng góp rất nhiều trong việc mở mang kiến thức đến nỗi nó trở nên không thể thiếu được đối với tất cả những con người văn minh.

8. A HORRIBLE SIGHT

On the main roads of West Malaysia accidents occur almost every day. Most of them are caused by young drivers who are long of speed. The recklessness[1] has caused the death of even careful drivers. What I am about to[2] relate concerns the death of some young people, resulting from the reckless driving of a young man.

On the day in question[3], I was travelling with my brother to Ipoh. As my brother's car was old, he had to drive slowly. We left Singapore, our hometown, very early in the morning, so that we could reach our destination before dark. The slow journey soon made me so tired that I fell asleep. However, we broke our Journey at Yong Peng, a small town in Johore, for some refreshment. When we resumed[4] our journey, we saw a number of badly damaged vehicles in front of the Police Station of that

town. My brother then began to talk about the various accidents that he had seen on that road. I began to grow uneasy about the rest of the journey. My brother had told me that most of the accidents occurred within a few miles of that town. I now began to fear for our own safety. Then, suddenly, a car, running at great speed, outtook our car. My brother then predicted that the car would be involved in an accident soon. After that my heart began to beat fast.

The car was soon out of sight. My brother, however, assured me that I would have an opportunity to see a very bad accident, and sure enough, we soon arrived at a distressing scene.

The car that had overtaken[5] our car was in a ditch[6] and four young girls were lying dead on the road-side. Their faces and clothes were covered with blood. Some people were trying to extricate[7] the other occupants[8], including the young driver, who were still alive in the car. But all of a sudden, the car was on fire, and their efforts failed. Thus, the occupants in the car were burnt alive, and it was indeed heart-rending[9] to hear their last screams. Soon a fire engine and the police arrived with an ambulance, but it was too late.

This was indeed a horrible sight, and even today the mention of accidents reminds me of those piteous[10] screams of the dying ones in that car.

NEW WORDS:

1. recklessness ['reklisnis] (n) *tính thiếu thận trọng, tính khinh suất, tính liều lĩnh*
2. to be about to [ə'baʊt tə] *định làm gì ngay, sắp làm gì*
3. in question [in 'kwestʃən] *được nói đến, được bàn đến*
4. resume [ri'zju:m] (v) *bắt đầu lại, lại tiếp tục (sau khi nghỉ, dừng)*
5. overtake - overtook - overtaken [,ouvə'teik] (v) *vượt qua*
6. ditch [ditʃ] (n) *hào, rãnh, mương*
7. extricate ['ekstrikeit] (v) *gỡ, gỡ thoát, giải thoát*
8. occupant ['ɒkjʊpənt] (n) *người sở hữu, người sử dụng*
9. heart-rending ['hɑ:t,rendiŋ] (adj) *đau lòng, não lòng, thương tâm, xé ruột*
10. piteous ['pitiəs] (adj) *thảm thương, đáng thương hại*

Một cảnh tượng khủng khiếp

Trên những con đường chính ở Tây Malayxia tai nạn xảy ra hầu như mỗi ngày. Phần lớn các tai nạn là do những tay lái trẻ ưa thích tốc độ. Sự liều lĩnh của họ đã gây nên cái chết của những lái xe thận trọng khác. Những gì tôi sắp kể sau đây liên quan đến cái chết của một số thanh niên gây ra do sự khinh suất của một tài xế trẻ.

Vào một ngày như vậy, tôi đang trên đường đến Ipoh với anh tôi. Vì chiếc xe đã cũ, anh tôi phải lái rất chậm. Chúng tôi từ giã Singapore quê hương chúng tôi vào buổi sáng sớm để có thể đến nơi trước khi trời tối. Chuyến khởi hành chậm chạp chẳng mấy chốc làm tôi buồn chán đến ngủ thiếp đi. Tuy nhiên, chúng tôi dừng lại ở Yong Pens, một thị trấn nhỏ ở Johore để mua thực phẩm tươi. Khi lên đường trở lại, chúng tôi thấy vài chiếc xe hỏng nặng trước sở cảnh sát của thành phố. Anh tôi bắt đầu kể về những tai nạn anh đã chứng kiến trên con đường đó. Còn tôi cảm thấy bồn chồn suốt cả quãng đường còn lại. Anh tôi bảo tôi rằng phần lớn các tai nạn xảy ra cách thị trấn đó vài dặm. Lúc đó tôi cảm thấy lo sợ cho sự an toàn của chúng tôi. Thế rồi bỗng nhiên một chiếc xe hơi chạy hết tốc lực vượt qua xe chúng tôi. Anh tôi đoán rằng thế nào chiếc xe kia cũng gây tai nạn. Sau đó tim tôi bắt đầu đập nhanh hơn.

Chẳng bao lâu, chiếc xe chạy khuất dạng. Nhưng anh tôi cả quyết với tôi rằng tôi sẽ được dịp nhìn thấy một tai nạn tồi tệ, và đúng như thế, một lát sau chúng tôi đi đến một quang cảnh thê lương.

Chiếc xe đã vượt xe chúng tôi lúc này đang nằm trong con mương, và bốn cô gái trẻ nằm chết trên đường phố. Mặt và quần áo họ bê bết máu. Một số người cố sức giải thoát hành khách còn sống trong xe, và người tài xế trẻ; nhưng thật bất ngờ, chiếc xe bùng cháy và nỗ lực của họ tiêu tan. Thế là những người trong xe bị thiêu sống và tiếng gào hấp hối của họ như xé lòng. Ngay sau đó, xe cứu hỏa và cảnh sát đến với xe cấp cứu nhưng đã quá muộn.

Đây thật là một cảnh tượng kinh hoàng và cho đến tận hôm nay, khi nói để tai nạn tôi lại nhớ đến những tiếng kêu cứu thảm khốc của những người sắp chết trong chiếc xe kia..

9. DISCUSS THE PART THAT MONEY PLAYS IN OUR LIVES

Money plays an important part[1] in our lives. In several aspects[2] it is the most important thing in life. It is therefore much sought after.

Without money we could not buy our food, clothes and all the other things that we need to live comfortably. We require money to travel, to buy medicine when we are ill and also to pay for the services rendered[3] to us by others. In truth[4] money is almost indispensable to our survival[5]. Most of our activities are therefore directed towards earning as much money as possible.

We use money not only to meet the basic needs of life but also[6] to pay for our own advancement. We use it for education which helps us to live a better life. Thousands of students are unable to[7] attend school or continue their studies for want of money. Lack of[8] money also causes great hardship[9] and sorrow in hundreds of families. Thousands of people are dying everyday throughout the world because they are not able to pay their doctors fee or because they cannot buy nutritious food.

As money is so important, many crimes are committed everyday in all parts or the world to gain possession of it. Some are driven by hunger and desperation to steal, rob, and even kill to get at least[10] what they require to keep body and soul together. Others commit the most serious crimes out of sheer[11] greed for money. Such people cause much trouble and unpleasantness in society, and to bring them to justice, large sums of money are spent by every government.

Today, millions of dollars are being spent by the various governments in the world for the betterment of the people. Numerous schools and hospitals are being built, and hundreds or acres or land are being cultivated to produce more food for the growing population of the world. As a result, the world is gradually becoming a better place to live in.

At the same time[12], however, much money is being wasted in producing deadly weapons of war. Countries which have more money than the others have become more powerful by strengthening their armed forces. This has led to rivalries among the powerful nations, and several parts of the world are in turmoil[3]. All this shows what an important part money plays in human affairs[14].

NEW WORDS:

1. play an important part [plei ən im'pɔ:tənt pɑ:t] *đóng một vai trò quan trọng*
2. in several respects [in 'sevrəl ri'spektz] *ở một vài khía cạnh*
3. render ['rendə] (v) render a service *giúp đỡ*
4. in truth [in tru:θ] *thật sự, thật ra*
5. survival [sə'vaivl] (n) *sự sống còn; sự tồn tại*
6. not only... bul also... *không những... mà còn...*
7. be unable to [bi ʌn'eibl tə] *không thể*
8. lack of [læk əv] (+noun) *thiếu*
9. hardship ['hɑ:dʃip] *sự gian khổ, sự thử thách gay go*
10. at least [æt li:st] *ít nhất*
11. sheer [ʃiə] (adj) *chỉ là*
12. at the same time [æt ðə seim taim] *cùng lúc đó*
13. in turmoil [in 'tə:mɔil] *trong tình trạng rối loạn, hỗn độn*
14. affairs [ə'feəz] (n, pl) *công việc, cuộc sống*

Hãy thảo luận vai trò của tiền trong đời sống chúng ta

Tiền giữ vai trò quan trọng trong đời sống chúng ta. Trên một vài phương diện nào đó, tiền là quan trọng nhất trong cuộc sống. Vì vậy người ta chạy theo tiền.

Không có tiền chúng ta không thể mua thực phẩm, áo quần và tất cả những vật dụng cần thiết cho một cuộc sống tiện nghi. Chúng ta cần tiền để đi lại, mua thuốc khi đau ốm và trả cho những dịch vụ mà người khác làm cho chúng ta. Nói cho đúng, tiền hầu như không thể thiếu với sự tồn tại của chúng ta. Phần lớn các hoạt động của chúng ta vì thế hướng tới việc kiếm ra càng nhiều tiền càng tốt.

Chúng ta dùng tiền bạc không chỉ để thỏa mãn những nhu cầu tối thiểu trong cuộc sống mà còn để nâng cấp cuộc sống của mình. Chúng ta dùng tiền trong giáo dục để có cuộc sống tốt hơn. Hàng ngàn học sinh không thể đến trường hay tiếp tục học tập chỉ vì thiếu tiền. Việc thiếu tiền gây ra khó khăn và nỗi lo lớn cho hàng trăm gia đình. Trên thế giới hàng ngàn người đang chết dần vì họ không có tiền để đến bác sĩ hay vì họ không có tiền để mua thực phẩm giàu chất dinh dưỡng.

Vì tiền quan trọng như thế nên hằng ngày trên thế giới diễn ra rất nhiều vụ phạm pháp để giành lấy quyền sở hữu tiền. Có người điên khùng vì đói khát và tuyệt vọng phải đi ăn cắp, ăn trộm và ngay cả giết người để ít nhất giữ cho phần hồn và phần xác của họ khỏi phải lìa nhau. Có người phạm những tội ác nghiêm trọng nhất đơn giản chỉ vì tham tiền. Những người như vậy gây ra rất nhiều phiền toái và khó chịu trong xã hội và để đưa họ ra trước công lý, mỗi một quốc gia phải bỏ ra những món tiền rất lớn.

Ngày nay, nhiều quốc gia đang bỏ ra hàng triệu đô la để cải thiện đời sống nhân dân. Nhiều trường học và bệnh viện đang được xây dựng. Hàng trăm mẫu đất đang được trồng trọt để sản xuất ra nhiều thực phẩm cho dân số đang gia tăng trên thế giới. Vì vậy thế giới dần dần trở thành một nơi cư ngụ tốt hơn.

Tuy nhiên cùng lúc đó, rất nhiều tiền bị hoang phí để sản xuất những vũ khí giết người trong chiến tranh. Những quốc gia nhiều tiền hơn trở nên hùng mạnh hơn bằng cách tăng cường lực lượng vũ trang của họ. Điều này làm các cường quốc đi đến thù địch và nhiều nơi trên thế giới đang trong tình trạng rối loạn. Tất cả những điều đó nói lên rằng tiền quan trọng như thế nào trong cuộc sống con người.

10. SCIENCE AND ITS EFFECTS

One of the most <u>striking</u>[1] features of the present century is the progress or science and its effects on almost every aspect of social life. Building on the <u>foundation</u>[2] laid by the <u>predecessors</u>[3] the scientists of today are carrying their investigation into ever-widening fields of knowledge.

Modern civilization depends largely on the scientist and inventor. We <u>depend on</u>[4] the doctor who seeks the cause and cure of disease, the chemist who <u>analyses</u>[5] our food and <u>purifies</u>[6] our water, the entomologist who wages war on the insect pests, the engineer who conquers time and space, and a host of other specialists who aid in the development of agriculture and industry.

The advance of science and technology has brought the different parts of the world into closer touch with one another than ever before. We are able to reach distant lands within a very short time. We are also able <u>to communicate with</u>[7] people far away by means of the telephone and the wireless. The <u>invention</u>[8] of the printing machine has made it possible for us to learn from books and newspapers about people in other lands.

Indeed, man's <u>curiosity</u>[9] and resourcefulness have been responsible for the steady stream of inventions that have created our civilization.

At the same time, however, there have been <u>harmful</u>[10] effects. Our machine civilization is responsible for numerous accidents and industrial rivalries among nations. Everyday hundreds of people are dying from serious wounds and injuries. Further, the rapid tempo of modern life results in wide-spread nervous disorder. Moreover, science, which has helped man to secure control over nature, has also made it possible for him to develop more deadly weapons or war. More and more countries are <u>competing</u>[11] with one another in the production of war material. But in these instances the fault lies not with science, but rather with man's <u>intention</u>[12] to misuse the discoveries of science.

Science is admittedly the dominating intellectual force of the modern age.

NEW WORDS:

1. striking ['straikiŋ] (n) *nổi bật, thu hút sự chú ý, thu hút sự quan tâm; đáng chú ý, gây ấn tượng*
2. foundation [faun'deiʃn] (n) *nền tảng; nền móng*
3. predecessor ['pri:disesə(r)] (n) *người đi trước; người tiền nhiệm*
4. depend on [di'pend ɔn] (v) *phụ thuộc vào*
5. analyse ['ænəlaiz] (v) *phân tích*
6. purify ['pjuərifai] (v) *làm sạch, lọc trong, tinh chế*
7. communicate with [kə'mju:nikeit wiđ] (v) *liên lạc với; giao thiệp với*
8. invention [in'venʃn] (n) *sự phát minh, sự sáng chế*
9. curiosity [,kjuəri'ɔsiti] (n) *sự ham tìm hiểu; trí tò mò; tính hiếu kỳ*
10. harmful ['ha:mful] (adj) *gây tai hại, có hại*
11. compete [kəm'pi:t] (v) *đua tranh, ganh đua, cạnh tranh*
12. intention [in'tenʃn] *ý định, mục đích*

Khoa học và những tác động của nó

Một trong những đặc điểm nổi bậc nhất trong thế kỷ hiện nay là sự tiến bộ của khoa học và ảnh hưởng của nó trên hầu như mọi mặt của cuộc sống xã hội. Xây dựng trên nền tảng của những người đi trước, các nhà khoa học ngày nay đang tiến hành nghiên cứu những lĩnh vực kiến thức lớn chưa từng có.

Nền văn minh hiện đại phụ thuộc phần lớn vào các nhà khoa học và nhà phát minh. Cuộc sống chúng ta phụ thuộc vào các bác sĩ trong việc tìm kiếm nguyên nhân và cách chữa bệnh, vào các nhà hoá học phân tích thực phẩm và làm sạch nguồn nước uống, vào các nhà côn trùng học chiến đấu với các loại côn trùng gây hại, vào kỹ sư chinh phục thời gian và không gian và rất nhiều những chuyên gia khác góp phần vào sự phát triển của nông nghiệp và công nghiệp.

Sự tiến bộ của khoa học và kỹ thuật đã làm cho các nước khác nhau trên thế giới xích lại gần nhau hơn bao giờ hết. Chúng ta có thể đến những vùng đất xa xôi trong một thời gian rất ngắn. Chúng ta có thể liên lạc với những người ở xa qua phương tiện điện thoại và máy vô tuyến. Việc phát minh ra máy in giúp chúng ta đọc sách, báo về con người ở những đất nước khác.

Thật vậy trí tò mò và tài tháo vát của con người là nguyên nhân của nguồn phát minh bền vững tạo ra thời đại văn minh của chúng ta ngày nay.

Tuy nhiên, bên cạnh đó khoa học cũng có những ảnh hưởng tai hại. Thời đại văn minh máy móc của chúng ta là nguyên nhân của vô số tai nạn và những sự đối đầu về công nghiệp giữa các quốc gia. Hàng ngày hàng trăm người đang hấp hối vì các thương tích trầm trọng. Hơn nữa nhịp độ tất bật của cuộc sống hiện đại gây nên sự rối loạn thần kinh đang ngày càng lan rộng. Bên cạnh đó, chính khoa học đã giúp con người đạt được quyền kiểm soát thiên nhiên, nhưng cũng chính khoa học đã giúp con người tạo ra càng nhiều vũ khí giết người trong chiến tranh. Ngày càng nhiều quốc gia cạnh tranh với nhau sản xuất ra trang thiết bị chiến tranh. Nhưng trong những trường hợp này lỗi lầm không thuộc về khoa học mà thuộc về con người đã sử dụng sai lầm những phát minh khoa học.

Khoa học được công nhận là lực lượng tri thức then chốt của kỷ nguyên hiện đại ngày nay.

11. THE RIGHTS AND DUTIES OF A CITIZEN

Almost every modern state, especially a democracy[1], allows its citizens several rights[2]; but in return, it expects its citizens to perform certain duties.

Among the rights enjoyed by the citizen in a democracy are the right to pursue his own affairs as he prefers; the right to express his views,

however silly they may appear to others, and the right to move about as he pleases. The citizen is considered so important that his rights are protected by the law of the state, and whenever they are infringed[3], he can secure redress[4].

But in a totalitarian[5] state, the rights of the citizen are so restricted that he has practically no freedom. The citizen is supposed to exist for the state. His interests are always subordinated[6] to those of the state. Thus, his duties exceed his rights.

Even in a democracy, however, the citizen is expected to exercise his rights within the limits of the law. He should not do or say anything that may affect the rights of others. In exercising his right to act as he pleases, for example, he should not try to elope with another man's wife or say anything slanderous[7] about her or anyone. In the same way, his actions should not cause injury or damage to any individual or his property. He cannot kill as he pleases. If his conduct infringes the rights of others, then those who have been affected by his misconduct[8] could take legal action against him and he will be punished according to the law of the state. In this way, the state protects its citizens and their rights from the thoughtlessness[9] of any individual in the state. This means, of course, that every citizen in the state is expected to do his duty to his fellow citizens.

The citizen is also expected to give his services for the protection of the state in times of war, and to maintain law and order in his state, at all times.

Thus, every citizen who is conscious[10] of his rights should also be conscious of his duties to the state and his fellow citizens.

NEW WORDS:

1. democracy [di'mɔkrəsi] (n) *nền dân chủ; chế độ dân chủ*
2. rights [raits] (n) *các quyền lợi*
3. infringe [in'frindʒ] (v) *xâm phạm, vi phạm*
4. redress [ri'dres] (n) *sự sửa sai, sự uốn nắn; sự đền bù, sự bồi thường*
5. totalitarian [,təʊtæli'teəriən] (adj) *cực quyền, chuyên chế*
6. subordinated to [sə'bɔ:dinət] (v) *làm cho phụ thuộc vào*
7. slanderous ['slɑ:ndərəs] (adj) *vu khống; phỉ báng*

8. misconduct [mis'kɔndəkt] (n) *hành vi sai trái*

9. thoughtlessness ['θɔ:tlisnis] (n) *sự vô ý thức; nông cạn, hời hợt*

10. conscious ['kɔnʃəs] (adj) *biết được, nhận ra, có ý thức*

Quyền lợi và nghĩa vụ của công dân

Hầu như mỗi một quốc gia hiện đại, đặc biệt là một quốc gia dân chủ, đều cho phép công dân có những quyền lợi nhất định; nhưng ngược lại nhà nước cũng yêu cầu công dân thi hành những bổn phận của mình.

Trong số các quyền lợi mà công dân của một quốc gia dân chủ được hưởng thụ, có bao gồm quyền theo đuổi những việc anh ta thích, quyền được bày tỏ các quan điểm của mình dù cho chúng nghe có vẻ ngớ ngẩn đi nữa, và quyền được đi lại tùy thích. Người công dân rất được tôn trọng đến mức các quyền lợi của công dân được luật pháp nhà nước bảo vệ, và bất kỳ lúc nào những quyền này bị vi phạm người công dân có thể yêu cầu bồi thường.

Nhưng trong một quốc gia độc tài, các quyền lợi của công dân bị hạn chế nhiều đến nỗi trên thực tế anh ta chẳng có chút tự do nào. người công dân được xem là phải tồn tại vì nhà nước. Các lợi ích của anh ta luôn bị xem nhẹ so với lợi ích của nhà nước. Như vậy, nghĩa vụ của công dân vượt quá quyền lợi của họ.

Tuy nhiên ngay cả trong chế độ dân chủ người công dân vẫn phải sử dụng quyền lợi của mình trong giới hạn của pháp luật. Anh ta không được làm hay nói điều gì ảnh hưởng đến quyền lợi của người khác. Chẳng hạn trong khi sử dụng quyền được làm những gì mình muốn, anh ta không được cố gắng tán tỉnh vợ người khác hay vu khống cô ta hoặc bất kỳ người nào khác. Tương tự, những hành động của anh ta không được gây thương tích hay tổn hại đến bất kỳ cá nhân nào cũng như tài sản của họ. Nếu anh ta vi phạm quyền lợi của người khác thì những người bị ảnh hưởng bởi hành vi sai trái của anh ta có thể nhờ đến luật pháp xét xử anh ta và anh ta sẽ bị trừng trị theo pháp luật nhà nước. Bằng cách này, nhà nước bảo vệ các công dân và quyền lợi của họ khỏi sự vô ý thức của bất kỳ các cá nhân nào trong đất nước. Đương nhiên điều này có nghĩa là mọi công dân trong nước phải thực hiện nghĩa vụ của mình với những công dân khác.

Người công dân cũng được yêu cầu thực hiện nghĩa vụ bảo vệ tổ quốc trong chiến tranh, duy trì trật tự và luật pháp trong mọi thời điểm.

Vì thế mỗi công dân hiểu biết về quyền lợi cũng nên hiểu biết về nghĩa vụ của mình đối với quốc gia và các công dân khác.

12. THE MOST IMPORTANT DAY IN MY LIFE

The most important day in my life was the day when my parents decided to send me to school.

I was then about seven years old. I had been playing with the children living around my house for some years. I had no thought of ever going to school. I enjoyed playing to catch fish from the shallow streams near by. Sometimes we went to the forest to catch birds and squirrels[1], and I had always thought that life would continue to be the same for me. But, one day, to my great sorrow, my parents suddenly announced that I was no longer to play about and that I was to go tỏ a school.

Words can hardly describe how sad I felt at the thought or having to go to a school. I had often heard that school teachers were very strict and cruel. I had also been told that there were many difficult subjects to learn in school, and I could not bear the thought of being compelled to learn them. But everything had been decided for me and I had no choice but to go to school.

Soon after I was admitted to school, however, I discovered to my great joy that learning in school was a pleasure. I began to learn about the people and other wonderful things spread throughout the world. The teachers were very kind and friendly and they often told many interesting stories. The subjects that they taught were also very interesting. As a result of[2] all this, I began to take a keen interest in my lessons and I no longer wanted to waste my time playing about.

Today, I am older and I am in a secondary school, learning more and more about the world around us. The knowledge that I have gained has enriched my mind and I have a better understanding of human problems. I am also able to speak the English language with some ease[3], and I know that my knowledge of English will prove of great value in all my future activities. I also know that if I can pass all my examinations, I wall some day occupy an important position in some profession. I might even become a minister[4] in the government of my country or a well-known person in some way.

Therefore, when I now think of the day when my parents arrived at the decision to send me to school, I am filled with love for them. That

was indeed the most important day in my life, a day which has changed the whole course of my life.

NEW WORDS:

1. squirrel ['skwirəl] (n) *con sóc*
2. as a result of [æz ə ri'zʌlt əv] *do, vì*
3. ease [i:z] (n) *sự dễ dàng; sự thoải mái*
4. minister ['ministə] (n) *Bộ trưởng*

Ngày quan trọng nhất trong cuộc đời tôi

Ngày quan trọng nhất trong đời tôi là ngày ba mẹ tôi quyết định gởi tôi đến trường. Lúc đó tôi lên bảy. Tôi đã rong chơi vài năm với các trẻ em quanh nhà. Tôi chưa bao giờ nghĩ đến việc đi học. Tôi thích chơi câu cá trong con suối cạn nước gần đó. Đôi khi chúng tôi vào rừng bắt chim và sóc, và tôi luôn nghĩ rằng cuộc đời sẽ mãi như thế. Thế nhưng vào một ngày nọ, thật buồn cho tôi, cha mẹ tôi bất ngờ tuyên bố rằng tôi không được rong chơi nữa mà phải đến trường.

Không có từ nào diễn tả nỗi buồn của tôi khi phải đi học. Tôi thường nghe rằng các thầy giáo ở trường rất nghiêm khắc và dữ tợn. Tôi cũng nghe nói rằng có nhiều môn học rất khó ở trường và tôi không tài nào chịu được ý nghĩ rằng mình bị buộc phải học chúng. Nhưng mọi việc đã định sẵn cho tôi. Tôi không còn sự lựa chọn nào khác ngoài việc đến trường.

Tuy nhiên, chẳng bao lâu sau khi ưng thuận đi học, tôi vui sướng thấy rằng đi học thật là thú vị. Tôi bắt đầu học về con người và những điều kỳ diệu khác đang diễn ra trên khắp thế giới. Các thầy giáo rất tốt bụng và thân mật, họ thường kể nhiều câu chuyện lý thú. Vì thế tôi bắt đầu yêu thích các bài học và không còn muốn phí thời gian rong chơi nữa.

Giờ đây tôi đã lớn hơn và là một học sinh trung học đang học ngày càng nhiều về thế giới xung quanh chúng ra. Những kiến thức tôi thu lượm được làm phong phú trí óc tôi và tôi đã hiểu biết nhiều hơn về các vấn đề của nhân loại. Tôi cũng có thể nói tiếng Anh lưu loát, và tôi biết rằng kiến thức tiếng Anh của tôi sẽ có giá trị trong cuộc sống tương lai của mình. Tôi cũng biết rằng nếu tôi đỗ tốt cả các kỳ thi, một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ giữ một vị trí quan trọng trong một ngành nghề nào đó. Biết đâu thậm chí tôi sẽ trở thành một bộ trưởng trong chính quyền nhà nước hay một nhân vật nổi tiếng trong một lĩnh vực nào đó.

Vì thế nghĩ về cái ngày ba mẹ quyết định gửi tôi đến học đường, trong tôi tràn ngập yêu thương. Đó thực sự là ngày đáng nhớ nhất trong cuộc đời tôi, đó là ngày đã thay đổi toàn bộ cuộc đời tôi.

13. THE SUBJECT I CONSIDER MOST IMPORTANT

Of all the subjects that I study in school, I think that English is the most important subject. It is mainly through the English language that we gain access to the various[1] sources of knowledge.

English is a language which is spoken and understood by many people in most countries of the world. It is, in fact, the most important means of communication among the various countries of the world. Knowledge of new discoveries and inventions in one country is transmitted[2] to other countries through English for the benefit of the world. In this way English helps to spread knowledge and progress[3].

It is true, however, that in the modern age, the study of Science and Mathematics too should be considered very important. Science has conferred[4] many benefits in man. But it requires little thought to realise that scientific principles cannot be understood well without a good knowledge of a language. And, though other languages such as German and Russian are important in the world of Science, it is English that plays the most important role[5] in spreading scientific knowledge. There is in fact no branch of study that has not been communicated in English. The original writings of great scientists, economists, philosophers[6], psychologists[7] and others who did not speak and write the English language have all been translated into English. Therefore, one who has a good knowledge of English has access to all the sources of information.

Further, as the English language is used by people of different lands and cultures, it has become very rich. It contains so many words, ideas and thoughts that a good knowledge of English enriches the mind and enables one to express oneself well. It also helps one to think better and to understand the people of other lands. It is for all these reasons that I consider English the most important subject in school.

NEW WORDS:

1. various ['veəriəs] (adj) *khác nhau, thuộc về nhiều loại; đa dạng*
2. transmit [trænz'mit] (v) *truyền đi (qua các phương tiện thông tin đại chúng)*

3. progress ['prəʊgres] (n) *sự tiến bộ; sự tiến triển, sự phát triển*
4. confer [kən'fə:] (v) *trao, tặng; bàn bạc, hội ý, hỏi ý kiến*
5. role [rəʊl] (n) *chức năng, vai trò*
6. philosopher [fi'lɔsəfə(r)] (n) *nhà triết học; triết gia*
7. psychologist [sai'kɔlədʒist] (n) *nhà tâm lý học*

Môn học tôi cho là quan trọng nhất

Trong tất cả các môn học ở trường, tôi nghĩ rằng tiếng Anh là quan trọng nhất. Chủ yếu nhờ thông qua tiếng Anh mà chúng ta có thể tiếp cận nhiều nguồn kiến thức đa dạng.

Tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ được nói và hiểu bởi rất nhiều người đang sống tại phần lớn các quốc gia trên thế giới. Trên thực tế tiếng Anh là phương tiện giao tiếp quan trọng nhất giữa nhiều quốc gia khác nhau trên thế giới. Kiến thức về những phát minh và khám phá mới trong một nước được truyền sang các nước khác thông qua tiếng Anh để mang lại lợi ích cho cộng đồng thế giới. Bằng cách này tiếng Anh góp phần truyền bá kiến thức và sự tiến bộ.

Tuy nhiên, hoàn toàn đúng khi cho rằng trong kỷ nguyên hiện đại, việc nghiên cứu Khoa học và Toán cũng nên được xem trọng. Khoa học đã ban cho loài người nhiều ích lợi. Nhưng không cần suy nghĩ cũng nhận thấy rằng người ta không thể hiểu biết các nguyên lý khoa học mà không có kiến thức về ngôn ngữ. Và mặc dù các ngôn ngữ khác như tiếng Đức và tiếng Nga cũng quan trọng trong giới khoa học, nhưng chính tiếng Anh chiếm giữ vai trò quan trọng nhất trong việc truyền bá kiến thức khoa học.

Thật vậy, không có ngành nghiên cứu nào mà không liên quan đến tiếng Anh. Tất cả những công trình nghiên cứu nguyên bản của các nhà khoa học, kinh tế học, triết học, tâm lý học vĩ đại đều đã được dịch sang tiếng Anh. Vì thế những ai hiểu biết về tiếng Anh có thể tiếp cận được mọi nguồn thông tin.

Hơn nữa vì được sử dụng bởi nhiều người của nhiều đất nước và nền văn hóa khác nhau tiếng Anh trở nên rất phong phú. Nó bao gồm rất nhiều từ ngữ, ý kiến và tư tưởng, cho nên một sự hiểu biết sâu sắc về tiếng Anh sẽ làm phong phú trí tuệ và giúp ta diễn đạt ý tưởng của mình tốt hơn. Nó cũng giúp ta suy nghĩ tốt hơn và hiểu biết về con người của những đất nước khác. Với tất cả những lý do này tôi cho rằng tiếng Anh là môn học quan trọng nhất ở trường.

14. AN INCIDENT I SHALL NEVER FORGET

Certain incidents[1] so impress us that they leave an indelible[2] mark on our memory. I was once involved in an incident of which I shall always have vivid[3] recollections.

The incident occurred when I visited a village in India together with my parents, sometime during my holidays last year.

Early in the morning on the day the incident occurred, I was talking with a few of my new friends in that village. All of a sudden[4], a boy of my age came rushing towards us to break the news that violence had broken out in the neighbourhood. Alarmed at this news, we began to protect ourselves, and before long the violence spread like wild fire throughout our area.

I was a little confused[5] at first for I had no idea about the cause of the outbreak of violence there. One of my friends told me that the area had been notorious[6] for such occurrence owing to[7] rivalry[8] between two parties. Each party tried to destroy the influence of the other in that area, and the bad blood that existed between them had caused several deaths and great misery to innocent people for a long time. Official influence could not be exercised effectively in this area owing to its remoteness[9] from the centres of authority. The members of the rival parties therefore enjoyed almost complete freedom of action. The police arrived only when there was news of violence, and often long after the damage has been done.

While I was listening to this account of facts and events, the situation suddenly took an ugly turn. A man who had been standing a short distance away from us ran into his house most unexpectedly, and within minutes his house was ablaze[10]. My friends and I then ran towards his house to put out the fire; but we were stopped by a few burly men who were holding lethal weapons[11] in their hands. They threatened to kill if we offered any help to anyone. One of them had even struck me on my head with a stick. We realised instantly that we were no match for them and that discretion was the better part of valour[12]. We therefore decided to proceed no further.

Soon the fire from that house began to spread and several houses were burning. There were frantic[13] cries for help. Men, women and children were running in all directions in their desparate[14] attempts to save whatever they could from the fire, in spite of the interference of the

gangsters. A few of the unfortunate ones were burned to death, including the man who had set fire to his own house. We then concluded[15] that the man must have been so disgusted[16] with what we had seen for so long that he had no more desire to live, and this was his way of putting an end to himself. It was indeed a pathetic sight.

Then, after several hours, the police arrived when more than a quarter of the village had already been burned to ashes. They asked us several questions to find out if we had ourselves participated in the violence. As I was foreigner who would be leaving that village the following day, I had the courage to answer all their questions and to point out the men who had threatened to kill us. Those men were then arrested together with other suspects.

Early next morning, my parents and I left the village with no more desire to re-visit this place; but my memory of this incident will remain fresh forever.

NEW WORDS:

1. incident ['insidənt] (n) *biến cố*
2. indelible [in'delibl] (adj) *không thể gột sạch, không thể tẩy sạch, còn vết mãi*
3. vivid ['vivid] (adj) *sống động, mạnh mẽ*
4. all of a sudden [ɔ:l əv ə 'sʌdn] *bất thình lình; một cách bất ngờ*
5. confused [kən'fju:zd] (adj) *bối rối, lúng túng, ngượng*
6. notorious [nəʊ'tɔ:riəs] (adj) *khét tiếng; có tiếng xấu*
7. owing to ['əʊiŋ tə] (adj) *do vì, bởi vì*
8. rivalry ['raivəlri] (n) *sự kình địch, sự đua tài, sự ganh đua*
9. remoteness [ri'məʊtnis] (n) *sự xa xôi, hẻo lánh*
10. ablaze [ə'bleiz] (adj) *rực cháy, bốc cháy*
11. lethal weapons ['li:θəl 'wepən] *vũ khí chết người*
12. discretion was the better part of valour *liều lĩnh đúng chỗ thì mới đáng liều lĩnh*
13. frantic ['fræŋtik] (adj) *điên cuồng, điên rồ*
14. desperate ['despərit] (adj) *tuyệt vọng; liều mạng, liều lĩnh*
15. conclude [kən'klu:d] *kết luận*
16. disgusted [dis'gʌstid] (adj) *chán ghét, phẫn nộ*

Một biến cố tôi không bao giờ quên

Có những sự việc mà ấn tượng về chúng mạnh mẽ đến mức để lại dấu ấn không thể xóa nhòa trong ký ức chúng ta. Một lần tôi đã chứng kiến một sự kiện mà ký ức về nó vẫn mãi sống động trong tôi.

Sự việc xảy ra khi tôi viếng thăm một làng quê Ấn Độ cùng với bố mẹ tôi trong kỳ nghỉ năm ngoái.

Vào buổi sáng sớm ngày xảy ra câu chuyện, tôi đang trò chuyện với vài người bạn mới trong làng. Bỗng nhiên, một đứa con trai trạc tuổi tôi chạy về phía chúng tôi báo tin rằng bạo động đã xảy ra ở vùng lân cận. Được báo động, chúng tôi bắt đầu tự vệ và chẳng bao lâu cuộc bạo động đã lan nhanh như lửa cháy qua vùng chúng tôi.

Thoạt đầu tôi hơi bối rối vì không biết nguyên nhân nổ ra bạo động ở đó. Một người bạn cho tôi biết rằng vùng này khét tiếng về những sự việc như thế do sự thù nghịch giữa hai đảng phái. Đảng này cố gắng triệt hạ ảnh hưởng của đảng kia trong khu vực và sự mâu thuẫn giữa họ đã làm một số người thiệt mạng và gây ra sự bất hạnh cho những người vô tội trong một thời gian dài. Những ảnh hưởng của chính quyền không có hiệu quả ở vùng này bởi nó quá xa các trung tâm quyền lực. Các phần tử của hai đảng phái thù nghịch vì thế hầu như được tự do hoạt động. Cảnh sát chỉ xuất hiện khi có tin tức về vụ bạo động và thường là rất lâu sau khi các thiệt hại đã xảy ra.

Trong khi tôi lắng nghe giải thích về tin tức và sự việc này, tình thế đã bỗng chuyển sang một bước ngoặt nguy hiểm. Một người đàn ông đứng cách chúng tôi không xa bỗng chạy vào nhà, và chỉ trong vài phút ngôi nhà của ông ta bốc lửa. Các bạn tôi và tôi chạy về phía ngôi nhà để dập tắt lửa, nhưng chúng tôi bị ngăn cản bởi những người đàn ông lực lưỡng mang vũ khí giết người trong tay. Họ dọa sẽ giết chúng tôi nếu chúng tôi giúp đỡ bất kỳ người nào. Một người trong số họ thậm chí đã dùng gậy đánh vào đầu tôi. Ngay lập tức chúng tôi thấy mình không phải là đối thủ của họ, đồng thời cũng nhận ra rằng liều lĩnh lúc này là không thích hợp. Vì thế chúng tôi quyết định không tiến thêm bước nào nữa.

Trong phút chốc lửa từ ngôi nhà cháy lan ra và vài ngôi nhà khác cũng bị cháy. Đây đó vang lên những tiếng kêu cứu điên cuồng. Đàn ông, đàn bà và trẻ em chạy tán loạn trong sự nỗ lực tuyệt vọng để cứu lấy bất cứ cái gì có thể từ ngọn lửa bất kể sự can thiệp của những tên côn đồ. Một vài người rủi ro bị thiêu cho đến chết, trong số đó có người

đàn ông đã đốt nhà mình. Sau đó chúng tôi kết luận rằng hẳn là người đàn ông đó vì quá ghê tởm với những gì chúng tôi đã chứng kiến trong một thời gian dài đến nỗi ông ta không muốn sống nữa và đây là cách ông kết thúc cuộc đời ông. Thật là một cảnh tượng bi thương.

Rồi sau đó vài giờ cảnh sát xuất hiện khi hơn một phần tư ngôi làng đã cháy ra tro. Họ chất vấn chúng tôi để xem chúng tôi có tham dự vào cuộc bạo động hay không. Vì là một người ngoại quốc sẽ rời làng vào ngày hôm sau, tôi đã can đảm trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi và điểm mặt những kẻ đã đe dọa giết chúng tôi. Những người này bị bắt giữ cùng với những người bị tình nghi khác.

Sáng sớm hôm sau, bố mẹ tôi và tôi tạm biệt ngôi làng mà không mong trở lại; nhưng ký ức về sự kiện này sẽ mãi mãi không phai mờ trong tôi.

15. THE VALUE OF MUSIC IN THE HAPPINESS OF MAN

Music has always been a source of happiness to all men on the earth. From their primitive days, men's love of music has led them to make <u>instruments</u>[1] of all descriptions to produce beautiful music for their enjoyment and happiness.

Without music the world would indeed be a very dull place to live in. Even nature is full of music. There is music in the movements of the winds, the sea, as well as the trees; there is music in the calls of the birds, flies and insects and also in the flight of the birds and animals. It is from all these things that men have learnt to <u>appreciate</u>[2] the value of music. The same things have also taught men how to produce music from the simplest of things such as sticks, bamboos, and animal horns. Men make many kinds of <u>flutes</u>[3] with bamboos which produce beautiful music.

That music is very important for men's happiness is hard to deny. Music removes men's depression and fills them with gladness. It is for this reason that music is played even in hospitals to cheer up the sick people.

As music has the <u>capacity</u>[4] to make men happy, it contributes greatly to men's success in life. A happy man is a good and hard worker. He works happily among people and earns the good-will or all around.

People like to associate[5] with him and to employ him in all kinds of work. Thus, he leads a happy and successful life.

The value of music in the happiness of man is therefore great.

NEW WORDS:

1. instrument ['instrumənt] (n) *nhạc cụ*
2. appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit] *đánh giá đúng, đánh giá cao, hiểu rõ giá trị, thưởng thức*
3. flute [flu:t] (n) *ống sáo*
4. capacity [kə'pæsiti] (n) *có khả năng*
5. associate [ə'səʊʃiit] (v) *kết giao; giao thiệp*

Giá trị của âm nhạc trong niềm vui con người

Âm nhạc luôn luôn là nguồn hạnh phúc cho mọi người trên trái đất này. Từ thuở ban sơ, lòng say mê âm nhạc đã khiến con người sáng tạo những nhạc cụ đủ loại để tạo ra âm điệu tuyệt vời mang lại thích thú và hạnh phúc cho mình.

Không có âm nhạc thế giới thực sự trở thành nơi cư ngụ buồn tẻ. Ngay cả thiên nhiên cũng tràn đầy âm nhạc. Có tiếng du dương trong những chuyển động của gió, của biển cả cũng như của cây xanh. Có âm điệu réo rắt trong tiếng hót của chim chóc, tiếng vo ve của ruồi muỗi và côn trùng cũng như âm thanh trong tiếng vỗ cánh bay đi hay chạy nhảy của chim và thú rừng.

Từ đó con người đã biết cảm nhận giá trị của âm nhạc. Cũng chính những âm thanh đó đã giúp con người tạo ra âm nhạc từ những dụng cụ thô sơ nhất như gậy, tre và sừng động vật. Con người đã chế tạo ra nhiều loại sáo bằng tre phát ra những âm thanh du dương.

Khó mà phủ nhận rằng nhạc rất quan trọng với hạnh phúc con người. Âm nhạc xoa dịu nỗi buồn của con người và làm họ tràn đầy niềm vui. Đó là lý do tại sao âm nhạc được sử dụng trong bệnh viện để khích lệ tinh thần bệnh nhân.

Vì âm nhạc có thể làm cho con người hạnh phúc, nó góp phần quan trọng cho sự thành công của con người trong cuộc sống. Một người hạnh phúc là một người làm việc tốt và siêng năng. Anh ta làm việc giữa mọi người và luôn được mọi người yêu mến. Người ta thích kết bạn với anh

ta, thích thuê anh ta làm mọi công việc. Vì thế cuộc sống của anh ta luôn sung sướng và thành công.

Tóm lại âm nhạc có giá trị to lớn trong hạnh phúc con người.

16. THE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF THE CINEMA

The influence that the cinema exerts on the minds of those who visit it is at once beneficial and harmful.

Today, there is a cinema in almost every town. The cinema provides so much entertainment[1] that few people fail to visit it. One or the reasons for the popularity of the cinema is that, it entertains[2] all types or people, young and old, literate and illiterate[3]. Because it is so popular, it must exercise some influence on those whom it attracts.

The films shown in the cinema are often very instructive and informative. Almost every film shows something about the activities and customs of the people in other lands. By seeing such films, one learns a lot about human activities. One also gains a better understanding of people of the world.

Further, some films show the battles that were fought in the past. They also sometimes show very vividly how man has struggled[4] through the centuries to remove discomfort from his life. In this way, some films have given many people an insight into the past. Even illiterate people have benefited from such films. What they cannot acquire[5] from books owing to their inability to read, they can acquire from films. School students, too, often benefit from a visit to the cinema. What they see and hear in the cinema makes a better impression on their minds than only the spoken words or their teachers. For example, a teacher of history can hardly describe a battle scene to his students as vividly as a film does. For all these reasons, the cinema is often regarded[6] as an important means of spreading knowledge.

It must be admitted, however, that some films have exerted an evil influence on many people. Films which show the activities of criminals have encouraged many youths to commit[7] acts or crime. Other films, too, such as those dealing with sex and other natural weaknesses[8] of man, have corrupted[9] the morals[10] of many people. As a result, the governments of many countries have been compelled to interfere in the

display and production of certain films. Yet, the cinema continues to retain its popularity.

NEW WORDS:

1. entertainment [,entə'teinmənt] (n) *sự giải trí, sự tiêu khiển*
2. entertain [,entə'tein] (v) *phục vụ*
3. literate ['litərit] (adj) *có học; biết đọc biết viết*
   illiterate [i'litərit] (adj) *mù chữ, thất học*
4. struggle ['strʌgl] (v) *đấu tranh*
5. acquire [ə'kwaiə] (v) *được, giành được, thu được*
6. regard [ri'gɑ:d] (v) *coi như, xem như*
7. commit [kə'mit] (v) *phạm phải, can phạm vào*
8. weakness ['wi:knis] (n) *điểm yếu, nhược điểm, khuyết điểm, lỗi lầm*
9. corrupt [kə'rʌpt] (v) *làm băng hoại, làm cho đồi bại*
10. morals ['mɔrəl] (n. plu.) *đạo đức, đức hạnh, phẩm hạnh*

Các ưu điểm và khuyết điểm của rạp chiếu phim

Những ảnh hưởng mà rạp chiếu phim tác động đến tư tưởng của các khán giả đến xem vừa có lợi cũng vừa có hại.

Ngày nay hầu như thành phố, thị trấn nào cũng có rạp chiếu bóng. Rạp chiếu bóng mang lại sự giải trí to lớn đến nỗi không mấy ai chưa từng đến rạp để xem phim. Một trong những lý do làm cho rạp chiếu bóng được ưa thích là vì đây là phương tiện giải trí của mọi người dân, dù già hay trẻ, trí thức hay thất học. Vì phim ảnh khá phổ biến, nó có tác động đến những người thích xem phim.

Những bộ phim được chiếu ở rạp thường có tính chất truyền bá kiến thức và thông tin. Hầu như mỗi bộ phim đều kể chuyện về những sinh hoạt, phong tục của con người ở những xứ sở khác. Bằng cách xem phim, người ta học được rất nhiều về sinh hoạt con người. Người ta cũng có thể hiểu nhiều hơn về các dân tộc trên thế giới.

Hơn nữa, có những phim kể về các cuộc chiến tranh trong quá khứ. Nhiều bộ phim kể lại một cách rất sinh động cuộc đấu tranh của con người qua hàng thế kỷ để cải thiện đời sống của mình. Bằng cách này phim ảnh đã cho con người cái nhìn sâu sắc về quá khứ. Ngay cả người ít học cũng thu được nhiều lợi ích khi xem các phim này. Họ có thể xem

phim để nắm bắt được những điều mà họ không đọc được trong sách vì mù chữ. Học sinh, sinh viên cũng học được nhiều điều bổ ích sau khi xem phim. Tất cả những điều họ nghe và thấy trong phim có ấn tượng sâu đậm trong trí tưởng của họ hơn bất kỳ bài giảng nào của giáo viên. Chẳng hạn một giáo viên lịch sử hầu như không thể miêu tả cho học sinh quang cảnh trận đánh sinh động như phim ảnh. Vì thế phim ảnh được xem là một phương tiện quan trọng để truyền bá kiến thức.

Tuy nhiên phải thừa nhận rằng phim ảnh đã gây ra ảnh hưởng tội lỗi cho nhiều người. Những bộ phim về các hoạt động tội phạm đã khuyến khích nhiều thanh niên phạm pháp. Những bộ phim khác về tình dục và bản năng yếu đuối của con người đã làm suy đồi đạo đức của khá nhiều người. Vì vậy chính quyền của nhiều nước đã buộc phải can thiệp vào việc sản xuất và trình chiếu phim ảnh. Dù vậy, rạp chiếu phim vẫn tiếp tục duy trì được tính đại chúng của mình.

17. DESCRIBE SOME OF THE INTERESTING PLACES IN YOUR COUNTRY

Though my country is small, yet there are many places of interest spread throughout the country.

In the southern most part of the country, where the state of Johore lies, there are some very interesting and beautiful places. In Kota Tinggi, for example, there are beautiful waterfals[1] which are visited by many people everyday. Then, there is Johore Lama, a place of great historical interest. In Johore Bahru, there is a beautiful beach which is visited daily by several people who love the sea. In Batu Pahat, another town in Johore, is Minyak Buku, an interesting place on the coast.

As we go towards the north, we arrive at Malacca, the oldest town that the Europeans occupied[2] in Malaya in the past. The influences of the Portuguese and the Dutch can still be seen in many of the buildings there.

Further north lies Port Dickson which is well known for its beautiful beaches.

In Kuala Lumpur, the capital of Malaysia, there are many places of interest such as Batu Caves, the zoo and the museum. The city itself is an interesting place to visit.

Another beautiful town is Penang, situated[3] on an island. The sea around it makes it the most beautiful town in the country.

Finally, the paddy fields[4] in the northern most parts of the country are also very beautiful and interesting to look at. On the east coast of the country too there are some beautiful towns such as Kuantan and Kuala Trenganu. All these places have indeed made my country an interesting place to live in.

NEW WORDS:

1. waterfall ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] (n) *thác nước*
2. occupy ['ɒkjʊpai] (v) *chiếm đóng, chiếm lĩnh, chiếm cứ*
3. situate ['sitjueit] (v) *nằm, xây dựng ở*
4. paddy field ['pædi fi:ld] (n) *ruộng lúa; cánh đồng trồng lúa*

Mô tả một vài nơi lý thú ở đất nước của bạn

Dù chỉ là một quốc gia nhỏ bé nhưng trên khắp đất nước tôi có rất nhiều thắng cảnh.

Ở vùng cực nam của đất nước, nơi có tiểu bang Johore, có rất nhiều cảnh sắc đẹp đẽ và thú vị. Ở Kota Tinggi chẳng hạn có những thác nước tuyệt vời mà hằng ngày có rất nhiều du khách đến chiêm ngưỡng. Sau đó là Johore Lama, một thắng cảnh lịch sử nổi tiếng. Ở Johore Bahru có một bãi biển đẹp mà nhiều người yêu biển thường ghé đến mỗi ngày. Ở Batu Pahat, một thị trấn khác của Johore, có Minyak Buku, một phong cảnh lý thú vùng duyên hải.

Về phía bắc chúng ta đến Malacca, thị trấn cổ xưa nhất mà người châu Âu đã chiếm đóng tại Malaya trước đây. Có thể thấy trên các toà nhà ở đây dấu ấn sâu đậm của người Bồ Đào Nha và Hà Lan.

Xa hơn về phía bắc là cảng Dickson nổi tiếng với những bãi biển đẹp.

Ở Kuala Lumpur thủ đô Malayxia có nhiều thắng cảnh như hang động Batu, vườn thú và viện bảo tàng. Ngay chính thành phố này cũng là một nơi thú vị cho du khách tham quan.

Một thị trấn xinh đẹp khác là Penang, toạ lạc trên một hòn đảo. Vùng biển quanh đảo giúp cho Penang trở thành thành phố đẹp nhất của đất nước.

Cuối cùng là những cánh đồng lúa ở vùng cực bắc của đất nước, tạo nên cảnh quan đẹp mắt và hấp dẫn. Tại vùng biển phía đông của đất nước cũng có một vài thị trấn xinh đẹp như Kuantan và Kuala Trenganu.

Tất cả những thắng cảnh này thật sự làm cho đất nước chúng tôi trở thành một vùng đất tuyệt vời để sinh sống.

18. WHAT CAREER WOULD YOU LIKE TO CHOOSE AFTER LEAVING SCHOOL

Today, it is not easy to choose a career[1]. Hundreds of students pass various examinations every year and compete with one another for positions in the various professions which are not so many as there are applicants[2]. I would, however, like to choose teaching as my career.

Teaching is an interesting career for several reasons. As a teacher I can learn many things, especially if I teach to an upper-secondary school[3]. If I teach History or English, for example, I have to read many books to make my teaching lessons more interesting to my pupils. Thus, I can acquire more knowledge of the subjects that I teach than what I can learn from the class text books. It is indeed a fact that a teacher learns a lot from the class text books; but that is hardly enough to make the teacher's lessons interesting to pupils. A good teacher must therefore read many other books.

Again, as a teacher, I have to speak well so that my pupils will be able to understand my instructions well. In this way I can improve my powers of expression. Even my pronunciation[4] of words will improve to great extent.

Further, as a teacher, I shall have enough leisure[5] to read and prepare for various examinations. It is possible today to sit for many important examinations by studying entirely[6] at home. Thus, I can acquire important qualifications[7].

Finally, as a teacher I will be respected[8] as an educated person. People will assume9 that I have certain qualifications and show their regard for me and the opinions that I express. Thus, I shall be able to live a happy life.

NEW WORDS:

1. career [kə'riə] (n) *nghề nghiệp; sự nghiệp*
2. applicant ['æplikənt] (n) *người xin việc*
3. upper-secondary school ['ʌpə 'sekəndri sku:l] *trường trung học phổ thông, cấp ba*

4. pronunciation [prə,nʌnsi'eiʃn] (n) *sự phát âm, cách phát âm*

5. leisure ['leʒə] (n) *thời gian nhàn rỗi*

7. entirely [in'taiəli] (adv) *hoàn toàn, toàn vẹn, trọn vẹn*

7. qualification [,kwɔlifi'keiʃn] (n) *khả năng chuyên môn, trình độ chuyên môn, tiêu chuẩn chuyên môn; văn bằng, học vị, chứng chỉ*

8. respect [ri'spekt] (v) *kính trọng, tôn trọng*

9. assume [ə'sju:m] (v) *cho rằng; thừa nhận*

Bạn sẽ chọn nghề gì sau khi ra trường

Ngày nay, chọn nghề là một điều chẳng dễ dàng. Hàng trăm sinh viên trải qua nhiều kỳ thi mỗi năm và tranh đua với nhau để giành chỗ trong nhiều ngành nghề khác nhau mà số lượng ít ỏi hơn nhiều so với số ứng cử viên. Còn tôi, tôi muốn trở thành một thầy giáo.

Có nhiều lý do để cho rằng dạy học là một nghề thú vị. Làm giáo viên tôi có thể học hỏi được nhiều điều, đặc biệt nếu tôi dạy ở một trường trung học phổ thông. Nếu tôi dạy Lịch sử hay Anh văn chẳng hạn, tôi phải đọc nhiều sách để bài giảng trở nên thú vị hơn đối với học sinh. Như vậy tôi sẽ tiếp thu được nhiều kiến thức về các đề tài mình đang dạy hơn là những gì có thể đọc qua sách giáo khoa ở lớp. Quả thực không thể phủ nhận rằng một giáo viên học được rất nhiều điều từ sách giáo khoa ; nhưng như thế vẫn chưa đủ để làm cho bài học hấp dẫn với học sinh. Một giáo viên giỏi phải đọc nhiều quyển sách khác nữa.

Tương tự, để làm một giáo viên giỏi tôi phải có khả năng diễn đạt tốt để học sinh có thể hiểu được những chỉ dẫn của mình. Bằng cách này tôi có thể phái triển khả năng diễn đạt của mình. Ngay cả cách phát âm của tôi cũng sẽ tốt hơn nhiều.

Hơn nữa, nếu là một giáo viên tôi sẽ có đủ thời gian rảnh rỗi để đọc sách và ôn luyện cho nhiều kỳ thi khác nhau. Ngày nay chúng ta có thể hoàn toàn tự học ở nhà để ôn luyện cho nhiều kỳ thi quan trọng. Nhờ vậy tôi có thể có những bằng cấp quan trọng.

Cuối cùng, khi làm giáo viên, tôi sẽ được kính trọng như một người trí thức. Mọi người sẽ công nhận rằng tôi có năng lực, họ sẽ coi trọng tôi cũng như những ý kiến tôi đưa ra. Như vậy cuộc sống của tôi sẽ rất hạnh phúc.

19. WHY IS AGRICULTURE IMPORTANT IN THE WORLD OF TODAY?

Since the <u>dawn</u>[1] of history, <u>agriculture</u>[2] has been one of the important means of producing food for human <u>consumption</u>[3]. Today more and more lands are being developed for the production of a large <u>variety</u>[4] crops. In Asia, vast areas of land are being used to produce rice, wheat, rubber and a variety of other crops. More than half of the lands occupied and developed by human beings in the world are devoted to agriculture.

That agriculture is one of the most essential means of producing food is realised easily when we think of the types of things that we eat. The rice or wheat that we eat comes from the land. Even potatoes and other roots or vegetables and even leaves such as tea, as well as the fruits that men eat are the products of the soil that covers the earth. In fact, everything that we eat, except meat, fish and other kinds of <u>flesh</u>[5] comes from the land, and what grows on the land is part of agriculture. Even the sugar, oil, coffee and other beverages that we use are products of plants that grow on land. In the same way, many of the medicines that we use are made of plants that grow in various parts of the world. The tobacco that we use for relaxation also comes from a plant.

Thus, it can be easily observed that without agriculture we would be almost without food. It is true, however, that in the <u>remote</u>[6] past men did live mainly on flesh that he obtained by hunting. But such a kind of life was unhappy and <u>inconvenient</u>[7], for animals were not found everywhere easily. Therefore, men turned to agriculture for his <u>livelihood</u>[8]. Today, agriculture continues to provide almost all the foods that men require to survive on the earth.

NEW WORDS:

1. dawn [dɔ:n] (n) *bình minh; buổi đầu*
2. agriculture ['ægrikʌltʃə] (n) *nông nghiệp*
3. consumption [kən'sʌmpʃn] (n) *sự tiêu thụ, sự tiêu dùng*
4. variety [və'raiəti] (n) *nhiều thứ, đủ loại; sự đa dạng*
5. flesh [fleʃ] (n) *thịt*
6. remote [ri'məʊt] (adj) *xa xôi, xa xăm*
7. inconvenient [,inkən'vi:njənt] (adj) *bất tiện, thiếu tiện nghi, phiền phức*

8. livelihood ['laivlihud] (n) *phương kế sinh nhai; sinh kế*

Tại sao ngày nay nông nghiệp quan trọng trên thế giới

Từ buổi bình minh của lịch sử, nông nghiệp đã trở thành phương tiện sản xuất thực phẩm quan trọng cho con người tiêu thụ. Hiện nay ngày càng có nhiều đất đai được khai khẩn để sản xuất những vụ mùa lớn. Ở châu Á những vùng đất mênh mông đang được sử dụng để trồng lúa gạo, lúa mạch, cao su và nhiều hoa màu khác. Hơn một nửa diện tích đất đai mà con người đã chiếm hữu và khai phá trên thế giới được dành để phát triển nông nghiệp.

Tầm quan trọng thiết yếu của nông nghiệp trong vai trò phương tiện sản xuất thực phẩm có thể được dễ dàng nhận ra khi chúng ta nghĩ đến các loại thực phẩm mình thường ăn. Lúa gạo và lúa mạch chúng ta ăn mọc từ đồng ruộng. Ngay cả khoai tây hay những loại rau củ khác, kể cả lá cây như lá trà, cũng như các loại trái cây mà cũng là sản phẩm của lớp đất bao phủ bề mặt trái đất. Trên thực tế, tất cả những gì chúng ta ăn trừ thịt, cá và những thứ thịt sống khác đều sinh ra từ đất đai, và những gì mọc trên đất đều là một phần của nông nghiệp. Ngay cả đường, dầu, cà phê và các thức uống khác cũng đều là sản phẩm của thực vật mọc trên đất. Tương tự, nhiều vị thuốc chúng ta lấy từ các thực vật ở nhiều nơi trên thế giới. Thuốc lá mà chúng ta dùng để thư giãn cũng lấy từ một loại cây.

Như vậy dễ dàng nhận thấy rằng không có nông nghiệp, chúng ta hầu như cũng không có thực phẩm. Tuy nhiên sự thật là vào thời xa xưa con người sống chủ yếu nhờ vào thịt động vật kiếm được khi săn bắn. Nhưng một cuộc sống như thế không sung sướng và thoải mái bởi vì không phải ở đâu cũng dễ dàng tìm thấy thú vật. Vì vậy con người chuyển sang nông nghiệp để nuôi sống bản thân họ. Ngày nay, nông nghiệp tiếp tục cung cấp phần lớn thực phẩm cần thiết cho sự tồn tại của loài người trên trái đất.

20. A HEROIC DEED

The story of man is full of heroic deeds[1]. One of the acts of heroism that I have seen myself was that of my uncle, who was attacked by a huge tiger while we were in our plantation[2], one day.

My uncle, a young and well-built[3] man, and I had left our home early in the morning to do some work in the plantation. When we reached

there, we could hear some dogs barking in the distance. But we did not suspect[4] anything, and began to do our work.

While we were working, however, we noticed some foot-prints of some animal. We then examined them closely and were satisfied that they did not belong to any member of the cat family, the most ferocious[5] of animals. We then resumed our work. My uncle took a long knife and began to cut some sticks and branches of plants scattered throughout the plantation, while I did some other work.

Soon, however, I saw a movement in the bush, a short distance away. I was alarmed. I ran up to my uncle to draw this attention, but he was hardly interested in what I had to say. He continued to do his work. But shortly after wards, my uncle himself observed the movement in the bush. Yet, he showed no signs of fear, and his composure[6] dispelled my anxieties. He warned me, however, to be careful, and picked up an axe that had been lying on the ground. His knife, he gave to me. Then, he moved slowly and cautiously[7] towards the bush, ready for any attack.

To our horror[8], a huge tiger soon emerged from the bush. But my uncle was prepared to face it, to escape seemed impossible. The tiger too seemed to be fully aware of the strength and courage of its adversary. It paused several times while advancing towards my uncle. Then, all or a sudden, it sprang[9] on my uncle, but his agility[10] enabled him to escape the sharp claws of the brute with the slightest injury. Now with the axe still in his firm grip, my uncle struck the tigers face again and again, until it was bleeding profusely[11]. The length of the handle of the axe made it difficult for the tiger to get to close to my uncle. That the tiger was at a disadvantage was clear to me from the beginning.

In the end, however, the tiger collapsed[12] and died. Within hours, after that all the people in our area heard of my uncle's bravery, which saved us both from death. It was indeed a greatest act of heroism that I had witnessed.

NEW WORDS:

1. heroic deed [hi'rəʊik di:d] (n) *hành động dũng cảm*
2. plantation [plæn'teiʃn] (n) *đồn điền, vườn cây, khu đất trồng trọt*
3. well-built ['wel'bilt] (adj) *lực lưỡng, cường tráng*
4. suspect [sə'spekt] (v) *nghi; nghi ngờ; hoài nghi; ngờ vực*
5. ferocious [fə'rəʊʃəs] (adj) *dữ tợn, hung ác*

5. composure [kəm'pəʊʒə] (n) *sự bình tĩnh, sự điềm tĩnh*
7. cautiously ['kɔ:ʃəsli] (adv) *cẩn thận, thận trọng*
8. horror ['hɔrə] (n) *nỗi kinh hoàng; sự khiếp sợ; sự ghê rợn*
9. spring [spriŋ] (sprang-sprung) (v) *nhảy, bật mạnh*
10. agility [ə'dʒiliti] (n) *sự nhanh nhẹn, sự nhanh nhẩu, sự lẹ làng, sự lanh lợi*
11. profusely [prəfju:sli] (adv) *ướt đẫm, rất nhiều; dồi dào*
12. collapse [kə'læps] (v) *đổ, sụp xuống, ngã gục*

Một hành động dũng cảm

Chuyện kể về loài người hàm chứa rất nhiều hành động anh hùng. Một trong những chiến công anh dũng mà tôi tận mắt chứng kiến là của chú tôi. Chú bị một con hổ khổng lồ tấn công vào một ngày nọ khi chúng tôi ở trên đồn điền.

Chú tôi một người trẻ trung và mạnh khoẻ cùng với tôi rời nhà vào sáng sớm để làm việc trên đồn điền. Khi đến đó, chúng tôi nghe tiếng chó sủa ở đằng xa. Nhưng chúng tôi không hề nghi ngờ gì cả và bắt tay vào việc.

Tuy nhiên trong khi làm việc chúng tôi để ý những dấu chân thú quanh đó. Sau đó chúng tôi xem xét kỹ lưỡng và hài lòng vì đó không phải là họ mèo, con vật tàn bạo nhất trong tất cả các loài vật. Rồi chúng tôi lại làm việc. Chú tôi lấy một con dao dài và bắt đầu chặt những nhánh cây mọc tứ tung trong đồn điền. Còn tôi làm công việc khác.

Nhưng chẳng mấy chốc, tôi thấy có động trong bụi cây gần đó. Tôi hết sức cảnh giác. Tôi chạy đến bên chú tôi để lôi cuốn sự chú ý của chú ấy nhưng chú hầu như không quan tâm những gì tôi nói. Chú vẫn tiếp tục làm việc. Nhưng ngay sau đó, chú tôi cũng nghe thấy tiếng động trong bụi rậm. Tuy nhiên, chú không một chút sợ hãi, và sự bình tĩnh của chú đã xua tan nỗi lo sợ trong tôi. Tuy nhiên chú cũng bảo tôi phải hết sức cẩn thận, rồi chú nhặt chiếc rìu đang nằm trên đất. Còn con dao, chú đưa cho tôi. Thế rồi chú di chuyển chậm chạp và thận trọng về phía bụi rậm, sẵn sàng tấn công.

Trước sự hãi hùng của chúng tôi, một con hổ to lớn từ bụi cây xuất hiện. Nhưng chú tôi đã chuẩn bị đối mặt với nó, việc thoát hiểm dường như là không thể xảy ra. Dường như con hổ cũng nhận biết sức mạnh và sự can đảm của đối thủ. Nó dừng lại một lát khi đang tiến về phía chú

tôi. Bất ngờ, nó nhảy xổ vào chú tôi, nhưng chú tôi đã nhanh nhẹn tránh khỏi cú vồ sắc nhọn mà chỉ bị thương nhẹ. Lúc bấy giờ với cái rìu nắm chặt trong tay, chú tôi liên tiếp bổ rìu vào mặt con hổ cho đến khi máu của nó tuôn ra xối xả. Cán rìu rất dài làm cho con hổ không thể đến gần chú tôi được. Theo tôi con hổ rõ ràng bị thất thế ngay từ đầu.

Tuy nhiên cuối cùng con hổ cũng kiệt sức và lăn ra chết. Chỉ vài giờ sau đó người dân trong vùng đều biết đến sự dũng cảm của chú tôi đã cứu hai chúng tôi thoát chết. Đó là một chiến công anh dũng nhất mà tôi đã từng chứng kiến.

21. CRIMES IN SOCIETY

The human society is full of activity. People work in all kinds of business firms, government offices, factories and other places, to earn their livelihood. Some work from dawn till dark; many work only at night; and others work during the day. At the same time men with criminal tendency[1]. are engaged[2] in all kinds of activity, which often cause great hardship[3] and sorrow to a large number of people in society.

Men develop criminal tendencies because of numerous[4] frustrations[5]. Society has always failed to satisfy the social, emotional and other needs of a large number of people, many of whom have therefore turned to crime for either survival or recognition. The activities of such men represent a constant threat to the welfare[6] society, and much being done to reform them.

But criminals cannot be reformed until they are apprehended. By that time, hundreds of people are forced to live in fear at the hands of criminals, who resort to violence at the slightest provocation[7]. Numerous people of various descriptions have been killed by criminals without proper cause. Society is therefore straining all its resources to bring criminals to justice. Large sums of money are being spent to employ men and equipment for the prevention and detection of crime.

Criminals are desperate men, and when they are pursued, they fight tooth and nail to escape capture. Therefore, those who are employed to capture them have to be brave, intelligent and well-trained[8] men. To have such men always on the alert for the protection of society involves much expenditure[9].

Punishment of criminals today, however, is not the same as what it was in the past. Society has realized its responsibility towards individuals

who always find a bone to pick with it. It is now believed that criminals could be reformed. Therefore, psychologists and others who are responsible for the welfare of criminals are doing their <u>utmost</u>[10] to train criminals to live a good life in the future. Only those who commit the most serious crimes are punished severely to deter others from committing such crimes.

NEW WORDS:

1. tendency ['tendənsi] (n) *xu hướng, khuynh hướng*
2. engage [in'geidʒ] (v) *tham gia vào*
3. hardship ['hɑ:dʃip] (n) *sự thử thách gay go; sự gian khổ*
4. numerous ['nju:mərəs] (adj) *nhiều, đông, đông đảo*
5. frustration [frʌs'treiʃn] (n) *tâm trạng thất vọng, tâm trạng vỡ mộng; sự làm thất bại, sự làm hỏng*
6. welfare ['welfeə] (n) *hạnh phúc, sự thịnh vượng*
7. provocation [,prɔvə'keiʃn] (n) *sự khiêu khích*
8. well-trained [wel 'treind] (n) *được giáo dục tốt*
9. expenditure [iks'penditʃə] (n) *chi phí; phí tổn*
10. utmost ['ʌtmoust] (adj) *mức sống*

DÀN Ý

Những tội phạm trong xã hội

* **Mở bài:** tội ác trong xã hội liên quan đến tất cả các hoạt động khác trong xã hội.

* **Thân bài:**

I. Nguyên nhân của tội ác

1. Nguyên nhân của tội ác

a. Xã hội không thỏa mãn nhu cầu tình cảm của dân chúng.

b. Phải cải tạo tội phạm.

2. Nhiều tiền bạc được dùng để đưa tội nhân ra trước pháp luật

a. Các tội nhân gây hại cho dân lành – phải thuê người và dụng cụ bắt giữ họ.

b. Các tội nhân là những người tuyệt vọng – phải có những người dũng cảm, kinh nghiệm bắt giữ họ.

II. Hình phạt cho tội nhân

1. Khác trước đây

2. Tội nhân có thể được cải tạo

3. Tội phạm nghiêm trọng thì mức án cũng nghiêm trọng.

22. A STRANGE HAPPENING

The mysteries of nature have always fascinated[1] the human mind, and many of them remain unsolved for a long time. The story that I am about to relate concerns a mysterious relationship between a baby boy and a snake somewhere in Malaysia.

I was indeed intrigued[2] when I read a report in a newspaper sometime ago that a snake had suddenly appeared in a room, with the birth of a child and that it had attempted to show some relationship with the child. I could hardly believe it. The report added that the mother or the child was finally convinced[3] that there was indeed some relationship between her child and the snake and she allowed the snake complete freedom to play and live with the child. To make sure that the report was true, I made up my mind to visit the house where this unnatural relationship between a reptile[4] and a human being was established.

Then, one morning, my brothers, sisters and I arrived at the house, not very far from ours. As we enter the house we were greatly surprised to find a baby boy and a large snake playing with each other mirthfully[5]. Soon, the mother of the child appeared and narrated[6] the events that led to the snake and the child to live together.

It seems that the snake was found lying near the baby just a few hours after the baby was born. A man was called in to kill the snake; but every time the man struck at it with the stick that he brought, the child cried with pain. The man then tried to take the snake out of the room, but again the child began to cry bitterly[7]. The child's mother then realised that there was some mysterious relationship between the snake and her child. She ordered the man to stop molesting[8] the reptile, and to the surprise of all those who had arrived on the scene, the child stopped crying. The snake then returned to the child without attempting to harm anyone. Since then

the snake has been fed by the mother of the child, and the snake and the child have been living together as brothers.

To see this strange occurrence, many people from all parts or the country come everyday. It is said that the snake, by its touch, has cured many sick people; but the mystery remains unsolved.

NEW WORDS:

1. fascinate ['fæsineit] (v) *mê hoặc, quyến rũ; thôi miên, làm mê*
2. intrigue ['intri:g] (v) *hấp dẫn, gợi thích thú, kích thích tò mò*
3. convince [kən'vinst] (adj) *tin chắc, đoan chắc*
4. reptile ['reptail] (n) *loài bò sát*
5. mirthfully ['mə:θfuli] (adv) *vui; vui vẻ*
6. narrate [nə'reit] (v) *kể lại, thuật lại*
7. bitterly ['bitəli] (adv) *một cách đau đớn, quyết liệt; cay đắng, chua chát*
8. molest [məʊ'lest] (v) quấy rầy, quấy nhiễu, làm phiền

DÀN Ý

Một sự kiện lạ lùng

* **Mở bài:** Câu chuyện về một bé trai và con rắn ở Malayxia.

* **Thân bài:**

1. Khi em bé mới ra đời.

2. Phản ứng của em bé khi người ta đánh rắn.

- Khóc khi rắn bị đánh
- Thôi khóc khi người ta không đánh đuổi rắn nữa.

3. Cuối cùng rắn sống với em bé như anh em.

* **Kết luận:** Một mối liên hệ bí ẩn giữa người và rắn.

23. THE IMPORTANCE OF AGRICULTURE

Since the time man learnt to grow crops, agriculture has been the main source of his food. Today, most of the people in all parts of the world, especially in the developing countries, are engaged in agricultural activities.

Man is mainly a grain-eating animal. In Asia, most of the people eat rice. In Europe, North America and Australia, wheat is the main food crop. Where rice and wheat cannot be grown, millet[1] and other cereals[2] are grown as food crops. Though man also eats meat, he enjoys eating meat only when he takes it together with rice or bread which is made from wheat. It is therefore clear that grains are the main source of man's food, and grains are agricultural products.

But man, however, cannot live on grains alone. He needs other foods too to make his meals more palatable[3]. He has therefore also learnt to grow vegetables, potatoes and fruits. Like grains, these things come from the soil. They have to be planted and grown with great care. As a result, men have made many experiments[4] on soil for several centuries to increase their production of crops. Men have also learnt to consume dried leaves to refresh themselves. Tea and tobacco, the dried leaves of certain plants, have become very popular as sources of refreshment. Even coffee and cocoa are products of plants. We also have cotton, jute[5] and other fibres[6] which we use to make cloth and several other things for our daily needs. All these plants have therefore become very important in agriculture.

In some countries, agriculture is the main source of wealth. The rubber[7] tree and the oil-palm[8] in Malaysia bring millions of dollars every year. In Bangladesh, the jute plant is the main source of wealth. Similarly, in almost every country there is at least one plant which makes a great contribution to the economy of the country. When all these are considered, we arrive at the conclusion[9] that agriculture must remain as the most important occupation of man.

NEW WORDS:

1. millet ['milit] (n) *cây kê; hạt kê*
2. cereals ['siəriəlz] (n. plu) *ngũ cốc*
3. palatable ['pælətəbl] (adj) *ngon*
4. experiment [iks'periment] (n) *cuộc thí nghiệm; cuộc thử nghiệm*
5. jute [dʒu:t] (n) *sợi đay; cây đay*
6. fibre ['faibə] (n) *sợi*
7. rubber ['rʌbə] (n) *cao su*
8. oil-palm [ɔil,pəl] (n) *cây cọ dầu*
9. conclusion [kən'klu:ʒn] (n) *sự kết luận*

DÀN Ý

Tầm quan trọng của nông nghiệp

* **Mở bài:** Nông nghiệp mang lại nguồn thức ăn chính cho con người, đặc biệt ở các nước kém phát triển.

* **Thân bài:**

I. Người là động vật ăn hạt.

1. Thức ăn chính

a. Châu Á: lúa gạo

b. Châu Âu, Bắc Mỹ, châu Úc: lúa mạch

c. Các nơi khác: ngũ cốc, kê

2. Thức ăn phụ: thịt

Các loại hạt trên là sản phẩm nông nghiệp

II. Con người sống nhờ vào những thực phẩm khác

1. Rau quả: cà chua, trái cây...

2. Trà, thuốc lá, cà phê, ca cao và cây cho vải sợi.

= những loại cây này rất quan trọng trong công nghiệp.

III. Nông nghiệp là nguồn phúc lợi chính của vài nước

1. Malayxia: cây cao su, cây dầu cọ

2. Bangladesh: đay => cho lợi nhuận

* **Kết luận:** Nông nghiệp là một ngành quan trọng của con người.

24. TRAVEL AS A MEANS OF EDUCATION

In the past travel was considered an essential part of education. Poets and writers realised the value of travel and went out to other countries in search of knowledge. A man's education was not completed until he had visited foreign lands.

That travel broadens[1] the mind cannot be denied. Those who remain within the confines[2] of their homes are cut off from the outside world. As a result, they develop a narrow outlook[3] on life. But those who travel come into contact with various types of people whose ways of life are completely different from theirs. They see things with their own eyes and

have a better understanding of the affairs of the world. The impressions that they receive while they travel remain fresh in their minds for many years, and all false impressions and ideas are removed from their minds. Thus, they are able to see things in their proper perspective[4] and make correct judgments and decisions. And to be able to make correct decisions is a valuable part of education.

It is argued, however, that the presence of the great variety or books, newspapers, the radio and television today obviates[5] the need for travel to acquire knowledge. One would study in the comfort and privacy of one's own home and absorb[6] all the knowledge that one desires. But there are many things which books cannot describe effectively. For example, the love and respect people in other lands have for us and the natural beauty of the various parts or the world cannot be described properly in words. They have to be seen and felt. Besides, not all can understand everything that they read about people away from their homes. To such people, especially, travel is an important means of education.

Of course, travel involves time and money which most people cannot afford. But the value of travel as a means or education is so great that time and money spent on travel are not a waste of effort.

NEW WORDS:

1. broaden ['brɔ:dn] (v) *mở rộng*
2. confines ['kənfainz] (n. plu.) *biên giới; ranh giới*
3. outlook ['aʊtluk] (n) *quan điểm, cách nhìn*
4. perspective [pə'spektiv] (n) *phối cảnh, viễn cảnh*
5. obviate ['əbvieit] (v) *xoá bỏ; tẩy trừ*
6. absorb [əb'sɔ:b] (v) *hấp thu*

DÀN Ý

Đi một ngày đàng học một sàng khôn

* **Mở bài: Du lịch mở rộng tầm nhìn của con người**

* **Thân bài:**

I. Du lịch mở rộng tầm nhìn của con người

1. Người ta tiếp xúc với nhiều người khác nhau

2. Người ta chứng kiến nhiều sự việc xảy ra

3. Người ta sẽ cởi bỏ những quan niệm sai, có sự đánh giá quyết định sáng suốt

II. So sánh du lịch với sách báo, đài, vô tuyến truyền hình

Giống: truyền bá kiến thức

Khác: du lịch là cách học hỏi trực tiếp sinh động hơn.

* **Kết luận:** Du lịch là một phương tiện học hỏi quan trọng.

25. A JOURNEY BY TRAIN

The house in which I lived before was near the railway station. Trains used to pass by at regular interval[1] and I had become so familiar with their sound and sight that I took little interest in them. It never occurred to me that I might make journey by train some day. However, when my father decided to take up a new appointment[2] in the place where we now live, it was decided that we should travel by train. It was only then that I discovered how pleasant a journey by train might be.

My father, mother and I boarded a train one afternoon. As the train moved out of the station, I began to think of the days I had spent in our old house which I could still see from the train. But soon the house went out of sight, and I began to think of my journey itself.

The train was now moving quite fast. The first thing that impressed me was the beauty of the landscape. There were green valleys, and tropical plants could be seen everywhere. In certain places there was tall grass. All this reminded me of the geography lessons I had in the class room. Several palm-oil and rubber plantations could be seen now and then. Sometimes I saw a few houses here and there. I also saw many vegetable gardens at several places.

The train stopped at many stations, and soon it became dark. But sometime later the moon appeared and the landscape looked romantic. As I looked outside, I felt a thrill of admiration[3] for the great artistry of nature.

Inside the train, too, everything was interesting. Some restless passengers moved about aimlessly and their restlessness was amusing. Some were sleeping with their mouths wide open, into which some mosquitoes[4] blundered[5]. Others were reading magazines and newspapers.

Occasionally, the ticket-checker passed by. At one corner I saw two policemen keeping a close watch on a man who was hand-cuffed[6].

At every station a few passengers alighted from the train while a few boarded it. Whenever the train stopped at a big station, I saw a large number of people on the platforms, smartly dressed, and often smiling. As the train moved out, many waved their hands and the passengers too waved in response.

After we had passed several stations, I felt sleepy and closed my eyes. When I opened them, I saw the dim light of the dawn. I looked outside and saw the mist-covered plants. The air was fresh, and some birds were flying about. The scene looked extremely[7] beautiful and I was lost in admiration of it. But we soon arrived at our destination and my enjoyment came to an end.

NEW WORDS:

1. interval ['intəvəl] (n) *thời gian giữa hai sự kiện; khoảng thời gian*
2. appointment [ə'pɔintmənt] (n) *công việc được bổ nhiệm; sự hẹn gặp*
3. admiration [,ædmə'reiʃn] (n) *sự say mê. ngưỡng mộ*
4. mosquito [məs'ki:təʊ] (n) *con muỗi*
5. blunder ['blʌndə] (v) *mò mẫm vào*
6. hand-cuff ['hændkʌf] (v) *xích tay, còng tay*
7. extremely [iks'tri:mli] (adv) *vô cùng, cực độ, cực kỳ*

DÀN Ý

Cuộc hành trình bằng tàu lửa

* **Mở bài:** Giới thiệu chuyến đi

* **Thân bài:**

I. Lên tàu

II. Tàu chạy

1. Tàu chạy: ngắm cảnh vật bên đường

2. Tàu dừng ở ga: hoạt động của hành khách

3. Cảnh vật bên ngoài, trên sân ga.

* **Kết luận:** Trạng thái và cảm tưởng của tác giả.

26. "NEWS TRAVELS FAST". DISCUSS

Until a few decades[1] ago news travelled very slowly. It took several days to know what was happening in places only a few miles away. But today news travels at a speed much greater than ever before.

In the past men had to travel on root to get information, even about the most unimportant thing. There were no motorvehicles[2] and travel was slow and difficult. As a result, news too travelled very slowly. If one's relative died in some distant place, one received the news of the death several days later. Sometimes there was no news at all. The difficulty in getting news and information about people in other places made life dull and miserable[3]. There was little communication among those whom we would regard as neighbours today. News was therefore difficult to send and in times of need, it was hard to obtain help.

But all this has changed today. The invention of the means of communication such as the telephone, the wireless[4] and several others has made it possible to send and receive news within a matter of hours and minutes. Even the newspaper and the post office help to spread news and information quickly. As a result, we know what is happening today in all parts of the world. If a great man dies or a war breaks out in some corner or the earth, we receive news about it almost immediately. The ease and speed with which news travels today have helped greatly in promoting[5] better understanding and co-operation[6] among the peoples of the world. When the people of one place or country suffer a sudden calamity[7], news is at once sent to all parts of the world and help comes from many countries within a very short time. This is not possible in the past when news travelled slowly.

That news travels fast can also be known from our own personal affairs. If we are ill or if something unfortunate happens to us, our friends and relatives come to know about it very quickly. It is therefore true to say that today, "news travels fast".

NEW WORDS:

1. decade ['dekeid] (n) *thời kỳ mười năm, thập kỷ*
2. motorvehicle ['məʊtə 'viəkl] (n) *xe máy*
3. miserable ['mizərəbl] (adj) *nghèo nàn*
4. wireless ['waiəlis] (n) *radio, máy thu thanh, vô tuyến*

5. promote [prə'məʊt] (v) *xúc tiến, đẩy mạnh; thăng chức*

6. co-operation [kəʊ,ɔpə'reiʃn] (n) *sự hợp tác, sự cộng tác*

7. calamity [kə'læmiti] (n) *tai họa, tai ương; thiên tai*

DÀN Ý

Thảo luận câu nói 'Tin tức lan nhanh"

* **Mở bài:**

- Trước đây: tin tức truyền đi chậm.
- Ngày nay: tin tức lan nhanh hơn hao giờ hết

* **Thân bài:**

I. Thông tin trước đây: Chậm

1. Không có phương tiện truyền tin bằng xe máy

2. Làm cuộc sống tẻ nhạt, khổ cực

3. Sự trợ giúp vì thế rất khó khăn

Câu chuyển ý: nhưng tất cả ngày nay đã thay đổi

II. Thông tin ngày nay: Nhanh

1. Nhiều phương tiện thông tin: điện thoại, vô tuyến

2. Báo chí, bưu điện

3. Thúc đẩy sự hợp tác, hiểu biết lẫn nhau giữa các dân tộc.

* **Kết luận:** Thật vậy, "tin tức lan nhanh" là rất đúng.

27. WORLD TRADE

In the past when men's needs were few, it was not necessary to get things from distant lands. But, today, the people of one country depend on the people of another country for a variety of things. As a result, world trade has developed.

Without world trade it would be difficult for the people of any country to get many things which are now considered necessaries. Some countries are not rich in <u>mineral</u>[1] resources. They have no iron or coal mines, while others have too many of them. Again, some countries are not suitable for agriculture while others have several <u>fertile</u>[2] plains to grow crops.

Further, even if a country is rich in natural resources, it may not have enough skilled men to exploit[3] them. For such geographical and other reasons the peoples of the world have learnt to buy things which they cannot produce profitably and to sell things for which they have a special ability to produce. West Malaysia, for example, specialises in producing rubber for which there is a great demand from several courtiers in the world. But she has no ability to produce machinery and several other things. West Malaysia therefore depends on other courtiers for many of her needs.

In the same way, all the countries of the world co-operate and exchange things with one another. From other countries we get motor-cars, radios, television sets and several other things, which we cannot produce ourselves. At the same time we give to other countries the things that we can produce better than many others. In this way, every country specialises in producing only a few things. As a result, the quality of goods is improved to the common benefit of the people of the world.

World trade has also raised the standard of living of the people in the world. We are able to use things made in countries across miles of ocean. As a result of all this, life has become more comfortable than what it was before; and it is realised that a country could hardly progress without world trade.

NEW WORDS:

1. mineral ['minərəl] (adj) *khoáng, (thuộc) khoáng sản*
2. fertile ['fə:tail] (adj) *phì nhiêu; màu mỡ*
3. exploit ['eksplɔit] (v) *khai thác; bóc lột, lợi dụng*

DÀN Ý

Thương mại thế giới

* **Mở bài:** Thương mại quốc tế phát triển để đáp ứng nhu cầu của con người
* **Thân bài:** Tầm quan trọng của thương mại quốc tế
  1. Giúp hàng hoá lưu thông từ nơi thừa đến nơi thiếu
  2. Giúp phân bố hợp lý vùng sản xuất.
* **Kết luận:** Thương mại thế giới đã nâng cao mức sống của con người.

28. A NARROW ESCAPE

Whenever my mind travels over the past events in my life, one incident stands out prominently[1] to remind me of the narrow escape[2] I once had from almost certain death.

In the rubber estates[3] of West Malaysia there are hundreds or snakes of which the cobra[4] is the most dangerous and venomous. This snake has a preference for cool places along the numerous streams found in the estates, where it relaxes, especially in the afternoons. Those who catch fish from these streams have, therefore, to be on the look-out for cobras. All this I did not know until I came face to face with a cobra one day, while fishing with my brother.

My brother and I were then spending our holidays in an estate where our father was employed. In the afternoons, my brother, who loves fishing, and I would go out to catch fish from the streams not very far from our father's house.

Wherever the water was shallow, we got down into the streams and searched for holes where fish usually like to shelter[5]. When we found one, we put our hands in and often caught some fish. Fishing in this way had its moments of excitement, for at times we also caught some water-snakes, which we found to be harmless. Then, one day, I came so close to death that I made up my mind never to catch fish again in that way.

A cobra, about six feet long, was lying along the water's edge of one side of the stream in which we were fishing. Its tail was in the water, but it was concealed[6] by the reeds and grasses along that stream. As I put my hand into the water, my searching fingers touched something tender. Thinking that it was a fish, I gripped it at once and tried to bring it out of the water. But it resisted[7] violently, and to my consternation[8] I discovered that it was a cobra. I relaxed my grip at once and rushed for safety. My brother, who was a few yards away, was too surprised to speak, but he soon saw the cobra which was now rushing towards him with its hood fully opened. I picked up stick hurriedly and threw it at the cobra. Surprisingly, the cobra now turned towards me, and I took to my heels. My brother then picked up a stick and ran after the cobra and managed to kill it just at the time when I was almost exhausted[9]. If he had been a little late, I might have been killed by the cobra. That was indeed a very narrow escape, an escape I shall never forget.

NEW WORDS:

1. prominently ['prɔminəntli] (adv) *dễ thấy; nổi bật*
2. narrow escape ['nærəʊ is'keip] (n) *suýt chết*
3. estate [is'teit] (n) *vùng đất (nhất là ở nông thôn)*
4. cobra ['kəʊbrə] (n) *rắn mang bành*
5. shelter ['ʃeltə] (v) *ẩn náu, nương tựa*
6. conceal [kən'si:l] (v) *giấu giếm, giấu, che đậy*
7. resist [ri'zist] (v) *kháng cự, chống lại*
8. consternation [,kɔnstə:'neiʃn] (n) *sự kinh hoàng, sự thất kinh*
9. exhaust [ig'zɔ:stid] (adj) *kiệt sức, mệt lử*

DÀN Ý

Thoát chết trong gang tấc

- Thời gian và địa điểm câu cá
- Diễn biến sự việc: tôi đã thoát chết như thế nào?

29. THE COUNTRY I WOULD LIKE TO VISIT

I have heard much about the beauty of the East as well as the West, about the wonderful islands in the Pacific and also in the Atlantic. In short, the whole world seems to be full of beautiful places. The country that I would like to visit, however, is the United States of America.

My knowledge of the United States of America is derived[1] from the geography and history books that I have read, the films that I have seen and the stories that I have heard from people who have visited this country.

The United States of America is a vast country with a mixed population. People from many different lands have come and settled here. This mixture of different races of people with different customs, religions, cultures and abilities have created a nation unique in history. Although this country has a very short history compared with that of the other large countries in the world, it is an example to the world of how people of different races could live together in peace and harmony. The exchange of ideas among the people of so many racial[2] origins here has contributed greatly to the progress and prosperity of the nation. There are

world famous scientists, doctors, lawyers, engineers, teachers and politicians whose original homes were in many different lands. The work of such men has made this country a wonderful land indeed. The roads, buildings and cinemas here may be said to be the best in the world. There are many places and things of interest such as Hollywood, the United Nations building, Niagara Falls and the sky-scrapers[3]. Even the natural vegetation and features are rich in variety. If one travels across the land, one will find different kinds of scenery in different places. Further, as the people here still follow their original customs and traditions, one will also have the feeling that one is passing through many different countries.

The people of the United States are proud of their country, for it was their country that gave the modern world ideas of freedom. The name of Abraham Lincoln will always be remembered by those who believe in the freedom of man. It was the United States, again, who saved the world from destruction[4] in two world wars. Such a country must be a wonderful land, and it is for this reason that I would like to visit this country some day.

NEW WORDS:

1. derive [di'raiv] (v) *xuất phát từ, bắt nguồn từ*
2. racial ['reiʃl] (adj) *thuộc chủng tộc*
3. sky-scraper ['skai,skreipə] (n) *nhà chọc trời*
4. destruction [dis'trʌkʃn] (n) *sự phá huỷ, sự tiêu diệt*

DÀN Ý

Xứ sở tôi thích đến thăm

* **Mở bài:** Giới thiệu Hoa Kỳ

* **Thân bài:** Tại sao tôi thích đến Hoa Kỳ

I. Đất nước Hoa Kỳ

1. Một nước đa chủng tộc rộng lớn

2. Có nhiều nhân vật nổi tiếng và tác phẩm của họ lừng danh thế giới

3. Có nhiều địa danh cảnh vật: Hollywood, Toà nhà Liên Hiệp Quốc, thác Niagara và những toà nhà chọc trời.

4. Đến Hoa Kỳ ta có cảm tưởng đi qua nhiều nước khác nhau.

II. Con người Hoa Kỳ

Yêu tự do.

* **Kết luận:** Đó là những lý do tại sao tôi thích đến Hoa Kỳ

30. GOOD MANNERS

Good manners play an important part in maintaining[1] peace and good-will in a community. A man who has good manners does not hurt the feelings of others, and therefore he is on good terms with his friends and neighbours and also with others. In this way he helps to keep peace in society.

But a man whose manners are bad has no respect for others. He uses words carelessly and behaves rudely towards other and causes a lot of ill-will and unpleasantness. In the end, it is he himself who suffers the most. Everyone avoids him and he is forced to live almost in isolation[2].

To live well in a society, money alone is not enough. We should also have good manners, for it is human nature to seek[3] friendship; and friendship cannot be bought with money. Friendship with others makes life pleasant and it has to be earned through our own attitude[4] towards others. If we are kind to others, they will be kind to us, and kindness is the essence of good manners. Bad manners not only drive away friends but also others, including our own family members.

Even the richest man cannot afford to have had manners. For a man may have enough money to buy all the things than he wants; but if his manners are bad he will have no friends, and no one can live happily without friends. Even the members of his own family may not respect him and finally he will become a lonely man.

On the other hand, a man whose manners are good has many friends. He commands the respect of all those who come into contact with him. He does not talk ill about others. Even when he is provoked[5], he tries his best to use words in a way which will not offend others. He is also sympathetic[6] towards the weak and ignorant and does not poke fun at the deformities[7] and weaknesses of others.

There are, however, many people who behave so well outside their homes that they are respected and admired by everyone outside. But in their own homes they are worse than the devil. Such people could not be

said to have good manners. Their whole behaviour is a pretence and it does not take long for others to discover this.

If one's manners are good, one behaves well everywhere, even when one is away from the critical eyes of others. Only such a person can live well in society. It is therefore essential for everyone to cultivate good manners.

NEW WORDS:

1. maintain [mein'tein] (v) *duy trì, giữ vững*
2. isolation [,aisə'leiʃn] (n) *sự cô lập hoặc cách ly*
3. seek [si:k] (v) *tìm, tìm kiếm*
4. attitude ['ætitju:d] (n) *thái độ, quan điểm*
5. provoke [prə'vəʊk] (v) *khiêu khích; chọc tức; kích động*
6. sympathetic [,simpə'θetik] (n) *thông cảm; đồng cảm*
7. deformity [di'fɔ:miti] (n) *dị dạng, dị hình*

DÀN Ý

Nhân cách tốt

- So sánh giữa người có nhân cách tốt và nhân cách không tốt.
- Tầm quan trọng của một nhân cách tốt: giúp xây dựng một cuộc sống tốt đẹp hơn.
- So sánh giá trị tinh thần và giá trị vật chất (giữa hành vi tốt và sự giàu có...)

31. CHOOSING A CAREER

It is not easy to choose a career today. Hundreds of students are leaving schools and universities every year to seek employment in the various professions, though employment opportunities[1] are not increasing proportionately[2]. As a result, there is a lot of unemployment.

The inability of the various professions to absorb all those seeking employment makes the choice of a career more difficult. Before one leaves school or university, one has many plans, confident that choosing a career will not be difficult. But when the time comes to choose a career, one finds that there are others with better qualifications waiting to

enter the same profession. Disillusioned[3], one then looks for any kind of employment. In this way, many who wanted to become police inspectors or field assistants in the rubber estates in this country, become teachers instead, and many who wanted to become teachers, have become clerks.

The lack of institutions[4] where people could acquire the skills necessary for a particular career makes the choice of a career even more difficult. For example, if one desires to become a journalist, one has to receive some training and instruction in a school of journalism. But if there is no such school, one is compelled to think of some other career. On the other hand[5], even if there are institutions where one could acquire the necessary skills, one may still experience difficulty in gaining admission to them because one may not have the financial resources or the academic[6] ability. Thus, many who wanted to become doctors and lawyers have actually become clerks and teachers.

Further, even if one has all the academic and intellectual[7] requirements for the career that one has chosen, one's temperament may not enable one to make a success of that career. Thus, many who passed several professional examinations and began their career as teachers are now working in the banks and other commercial[8] firms.

All this indicates the difficulty in choosing a career. Only a few are able to remain in the professions of their choice.

NEW WORDS:

1. opportunity [,ɔpə'tju:niti] (n) *cơ hội, thời cơ*
2. proportionately [prə'pɔ:ʃənətli] (adv) *cân xứng, tương xứng*
3. disillusion [,disi'lu:ʒn] (v) *làm vỡ mộng, làm tan vỡ ảo tưởng*
4. institution [,insti'tju:ʃn] (n) *cơ quan, tổ chức*
5. on the other hand *trái lại*
6. academic [,ækə'demik] (adj) *thuộc về học thuật, học vấn*
7. intellectual [,inti'lektjuəl] (adj) *(thuộc) trí óc; (thuộc) trí tuệ*
8. commercial [kə'mə:ʃl] (adj) *thuộc về hoặc dành cho thương mại*

DÀN Ý

Chọn nghề nghiệp

* **Mở bài:** Chọn nghề là việc rất khó khăn

* **Thân bài:** Giải thích lý do:

1. Thiếu tổ chức đào tạo kỹ năng nghề nghiệp.
2. Thiếu tài chính, trình độ học vấn không phù hợp.
3. Khí chất không phù hợp với ngành nghề.

* **Kết luận:** Chỉ số ít người chọn được nghề phù hợp với họ.

32. A VISIT TO A ZOO

The zoo is an artificial forest created by man. Though there are few trees compared with the natural forest, the animals, birds and other creatures found in the zoo must always remind us of the forest. It is indeed an interesting place to visit.

Even in the natural forest such a variety of animals, birds and other creatures cannot be found as are found in a big zoo. Animals which are not found in the forests of one country are caught in other parts or the world and brought to the zoo. The lion, for example, is not fourd in Malaysia; but one may see an African lion in the zoo at Johore Bahru.

Until I visited the zoo at Johore Bahru, a few months ago, I had no idea how informative[1] a visit to a zoo might be. Though the zoo at Johore Bahru is not big, I found many kinds of interesting animals and other creatures there. Lions, tigers and other animals were moving about lazily in their cages. Some of the animals appeared to be bored, and they took little interest in the visitors. The monkeys, however, showed their natural agility[2]. Whenever they saw a visitor, they ran towards him and begged[3] for something to eat. I was indeed amused at their behaviour. Most or them were caught in Malaysia and their variety was amazing.

Some of the birds too were very interesting to see. Their beautiful feathers and looks fascinated[4] me. Birds are indeed one of the loveliest creations of God. A few birds are larger than many animals.

The lions and the tigers in this zoo were so docile[5] that I could not but treat them as domestic animals like the dog and the cat. I went very close to them, but they showed little interest in me. I then began to think of how the animal or even human spirit could be broken by confinement. Confined to their cages, these animals had become spiritless. Even the sight of food did not seem to excite them much.

Then, there was the crocodile[6] with its usual pretence of innocence. It refused to be disturbed. Heaven knows how it might have reacted if a child had fallen into its pit. However, my visit to the zoo had increased my knowledge of animals.

NEW WORDS:

1. informative [in'fɔ:mətiv] (adj) *cung cấp nhiều thông tin; có tác dụng nâng cao kiến thức*
2. agility [ə'dʒiliti] (n) *sự nhanh nhẹn, sự lanh lợi*
3. beg [beg] (v) *xin; cầu xin*
4. fascinate ['fæsineit] (v) *mê hoặc, quyến rũ*
5. docile ['dousail] (adj) *dễ bảo, dễ sai khiến, ngoan ngoãn*
6. crocodile ['krɔkədail] (adj) *cá sấu châu Phi, cá sấu*

DÀN Ý

Thăm sở thú

* **Mở bài:** Sở thú là một nơi lý thú để viếng thăm

* **Thân bài: Tôi đi thăm sở thú ở Johore Bahru như thế nào?**

Miêu tả chung về sở thú:

- Kích thước
- Các loài chim ở sở thú
- Các loài thú và hoạt động của chúng: khỉ, sư tử, hổ, cá sấu ở sở thú

* **Kết luận:** Đi thăm sở thú mở rộng kiến thức của tôi về loài vật

33. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE NEWSPAPER

The newspaper, today, plays a vital role[1] in human affairs. Its importance has not been diminished[2] by the appearance of the radio or the television. Men no longer have travel to get information. The newspaper has become the main source of information about local and foreign affairs. Though the radio and television convey[3] important news and messages quicker than the newspaper, they seldom give the details of an incident. The newspaper, on the other hand, gives not only more detail about a particular incident but it also contains more new items. This is of great importance today when political changes occur with a rapidity unknown

before. Besides, the newspaper is easier to carry and it could be read at any time during the day. Further, the permanence[4] of the printed word helps one to refresh one's memory of certain facts and incidents reported in the past.

The importance of the newspaper has been increased greatly by the spread of education. Education sharpens one's curiosity about events in distant lands and also makes one conscious[5] of the necessity to maintain one's reading habits. In both respects the newspaper appeals most, especially if one finds little time to read books.

The newspaper should, however, be read with caution, for its capacity to do harm is great. Most people believe every thing that is reported by the newspaper. As a result, the newspaper exerts a profound influence on the minds of its reader. Therefore, when some news is reported wrongly either by mistake or design, it may cause a lot of harm. On the other hand, if the policy[6] of the newspaper is to promote the welfare of the people, it could do a lot of good. For example, it could exercise its influence to persuade the government of a country to do many things for the benefit of the people. In a country like Malaysia, where there are many races of people, the newspaper could also use its influence to promote good-will and harmony among the people. It is therefore important to know the policy of the newspaper that one reads.

In general, however, the newspaper tries to report as accurately[7] as possible, for there are various magazines and periodicals[8] competing with the newspaper to provide accurate information on world developments, and it is the newspaper that links us with the outside world.

NEW WORDS:

1. vital role ['vaitl roul] (n) *vai trò thiết yếu*
2. diminish [di'miniʃ] (v) *giảm bớt; thu nhỏ*
3. convey [kən'vei] (v) *truyền đạt, chuyển tải*
4. permanence ['pə:mənəns] (n) *tính lâu dài, lâu bền; tính vĩnh cửu*
5. conscious ['kɔnʃəs] (adj) *có ý thức, biết được, nhận ra*
6. policy ['pɔləsi] (n) *đường lối hành động, chính sách*
7. accurately ['ækjuritli] (adv) *một cách đúng đắn, chính xác*
8. periodical [,piəri'ɔdikl] (n) *tạp chí xuất bản định kỳ*

DÀN Ý

Tầm quan trọng của báo chí

* **Mở bài**
* **Thân bài:**

I. Tầm quan trọng của báo chí

1. Báo chí là nguồn thông tin chính

a. Tin tức của báo chí rất chi tiết

b. Báo chí rất dễ mang theo người

c. Giúp lưu trữ thông tin

2. Báo chí và giáo dục

II. Báo chí nên chính xác

1. Báo chí sai lầm – rất tai hại

2. Báo chí được dùng cho phúc lợi người dân

34. THE THINGS THAT I LIKE MOST

There are so many things around us that one finds it hard to have a special preference for a few particular things. I, however, take a special interest in motor-car and television.

Motor-cars have always fascinated me. Since my childhood[1] I have been travelling in motor-cars, and I have visited hundreds of places in this country. I have been to remote villages and almost all the towns, large and small. Travel has broadened[2] my outlook on life. I have met various types of people, and my knowledge of the people and places of this country has increased greatly. If I am at home or if I am walking along a road, I feel the urge[3] to travel as soon as I see a car.

It is because of motor-cars that I am able to do various types of work. In the morning I go to my school, a long distance away, in my father's car. After school I go to my father's plantation to help him in his work. Then I visit one of my class-mates and discuss our school work. Sometimes I visit the cinema, miles away. If there were no motor-cars, I would not have seen so much. Even in this small country, I would perhaps not have been able even to attend school.

The next thing that I like is television. Television helps us to see and hear some of the famous leaders of the world. We are also able to see some of the great events of the day. In addition, we can get news from all parts or the world, and listen to songs and music. Sometimes there are special programmes which are very amusing. The television programmes become more interesting on a rainy day. We can then sit in the comfort of our home and watch the television programme. Even if we cannot read the newspaper for some reason, television keeps us well informed about the latest developments in the world. In this respect, television is better than the radio because the pictures and incidents shown on television convey a better impression than only the spoken words of the radio.

I shall therefore always have a special preference for the motor-car and television.

NEW WORDS:

1. childhood ['tʃaildhud] (n) *tuổi thơ ấu, thời thơ ấu*
2. broaden ['brɔ:dn] (v) *mở rộng*
3. urge [ə:dʒ] (adv) *sự thôi thúc; sự thúc đẩy mạnh mẽ, sự ham muốn mạnh mẽ*

DÀN Ý

Những thứ mà tôi thích nhất

* **Mở bài:** Xe hơi và vô tuyến truyền hình
* **Thân bài:**
  1. Tầm quan trọng của xe hơi
  2. Tầm quan trọng của truyền hình

35. MY HOBBY

To have a hobby is to know how to spend one's leisure moments. A hobby, besides providing an avenue[1] of escape from boredom, can also add to one's knowledge of human affairs. My hobby is reading.

When my day's work is over, I sit down in the privacy[2] of my room and read the newspaper. Reading the newspaper is like travelling round the world. As I read about the developments in the various parts of the world, I fell that I am there myself observing the incidents. I also feel

that I am having contacts with many leaders and peoples of the world. This feeling is a source of pleasure to me. By reading the newspaper I have acquired a better knowledge of the world. I am aware of what scientists, economists and politicians are doing to make this world a better place to live in. At the same time, I am also aware of the activities of those who are trying to create <u>chaos</u>[3] in the world.

After reading the newspaper, I take a book which requires deep <u>concentration</u>[4], such as a history book or a book on Psychology. Sometimes I read a novel or a popular magazine. Through this hobby I have learned that people every where are the same, in all ages, and in all countries. I have also learned that the world was made not for man alone but for every creature that can feel hunger and thirst, warm and cold. It has also helped me to see not only into the most remote regions of the world today but also into the world in which our <u>ancestors</u>[5] lived.

My hobby has deepened and widened my knowledge of man and his place in the <u>universe</u>[6]. Reading, I think, has made men more human, broad-minded and sympathetic. It has brought me into contact with many great minds, and <u>acquainted</u>[7] with the beauty of language and ideas. It has also improved my powers of expression. I have little difficulty in expressing my thoughts and feelings.

Therefore, I could say that my hobby has made me a better person.

NEW WORDS:

1. avenue ['ævinju:] (n) *đại lộ*
2. privacy ['privəsi] (n) *sự riêng tư; sự cách biệt*
3. chaos ['keiɔs] (n) *sự hỗn độn, sự hỗn loạn, sự lộn xộn*
4. concentration [,kɔnsn'treiʃn] *sự tập trung*
5. ancestor ['ænsistə] (n) *ông bà, tổ tiên*
6. universe ['ju:nivə:s] (n) *vũ trụ*
7. acquaint [ə'kweint] (v) *làm quen*

DÀN Ý

Sở thích của tôi

* Thú tiêu khiển của tôi là:

- Đọc báo chí

- Đọc sách

* Ích lợi của của việc đọc sách báo

36. THE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF THE CINEMA

Cinemas are a common sight nowadays. They are found in every town. The existence of so many cinemas reflects their popularity. They have indeed become the most popular places of entertainment[1].

The cinema attracts large numbers of people everyday. It is the magnet[2] of the town. It sometimes attracts even those who do not wish to see a film.

As it is so popular, the cinema exerts a profound[3] influence on the minds of many people, young and old. The influence is sometimes good, and sometimes it is bad. Films showing criminal activities and the sensual[4] desires of man have caused much harm to many youths. Some youths have become criminals themselves though almost every film shows how the good always triumphs[5] over the evil. The cinema has also caused many people to waste money. Such people have become so addicted[6] to visiting the cinema that they see almost every film, good or bad. In this way money is wasted not only on purchasing[7] tickets for admittance to the cinema but also on travelling and many other things.

Often, however, the cinema helps to spread knowledge. There are many films which show the activities of the various races of people living in the remote regions of the earth. Some films show how man has struggled through the centuries to make the world a better place to live in. There are also films which show the events that led to some of the important battles in the past. They are shown with so much realism[8] that one remembers them for a long time. Such films are indeed invaluable, especially to those who are illiterate. In this respect the cinema could be regarded as a school. Even the dullest student learns many things if he sees an educational film in the cinema, though he may learn nothing from his teacher or his books. Such is the effect of the film, and in many countries, educational authorities are trying to make the best use of the cinema to spread knowledge and information.

It is therefore clear that the cinema has many advantages as well as disadvantages. Often the advantages outweigh[9] the disadvantages. Those

who visit the cinema with the purpose of learning something good are sure to benefit from almost every visit to the cinema.

NEW WORDS:

1. entertainment [,entə'teinmənt] (n) *tiêu khiển, giải trí*
2. magnet ['mægnit] (n) *nam châm*
3. profound [prə'faund] (adj) *sâu sắc, sâu rộng*
4. sensual ['senʃuəl] (adj) (thuộc) *xác thịt; nhục dục*
5. triumph ['traiʌmf] (v) *chiến thắng; thắng lợi*
6. addicted [ə'diktid] (adj) *say mê, nghiện*
7. purchase ['pə:tʃəs] (v) *mua, sắm*
8. realism ['riəlizm] (n) *chủ nghĩa hiện thực*
9. outweigh [aut'wei] (v) *nặng hơn; có nhiều giá trị hơn, có nhiều ảnh hưởng hơn*

DÀN Ý

Ưu điểm và khuyết điểm của phim ảnh

* **Khuyết điểm**

- Phim kích động tội phạm và ước muốn khoái lạc của thanh niên
- Người ta tiêu phí tiền vào phim ảnh

* **Ưu điểm**

Truyền bá kiến thức

37. THE IMPORTANCE OF EXAMINATIONS

Life today has become so complex[1] that examinations have come to play an important part in one's educational career. Examinations are considered so important that most students are afraid of them.

The ability to pass an examination is indeed a valuable quality. It shows that the student is able to express his thought and ideas to a manner others can understand. It also shows that the student has acquired[2] a certain amount of knowledge in some branches of study. Besides, the mind of a student, even if he is dull, receives good exercise when he prepares for an examination. A student's success in an

examination, therefore, helps employers and others to assess[3] his mental or general ability.

Some people, however, argue[4] that examinations test only a certain kind of skill. They say that many people have a good memory and a special ability to pass examinations and achieve[5] brilliant results, though they have no capacity for original thought or imagination. But it should be realised that today the syllabuses[6] are so extensive that a student cannot expect to pass an examination by relying entirely[7] on his memory. The student of today must not only have a fair knowledge of the subject matter but also be able to show his intelligence and power of reasoning, especially if he is sitting for a higher examination. Therefore, a student's ability to pass an examination must indicate some of his mental powers as well as his grasp[8] of the subjects that he has studied.

If there were no examinations, most scholars[9] would have been less informed than they are today. Examinations compel[10] students to read as much as they can, and as they do so, they absorb knowledge unconsciously[11]. Further, because of examinations; teachers have to confine themselves to the syllabuses which are aimed at imparting[12] knowledge in a systematic[13] manner, and thus develop mental discipline.

Examinations are therefore an important part of academic studies.

NEW WORDS:

1. complex ['kɔmpleks] (adj) *phức tạp, rắc rối*
2. acquire [ə'kwaiə] (v) *thu được, đạt được*
3. assess [ə'ses] (v) *đánh giá; ước định*
4. argue ['ɑ:gju:] (v) *biện luận, tranh luận*
5. achieve [ə'tʃi:v] (v) *đạt được, giành được*
6. syllabus ['siləbəs] (n) *chương trình học, đề cương bài giảng*
7. entirely [in'taiəli] (adv) *hoàn toàn*
8. grasp [grɑ:sp] (n) *sự nắm được, sự hiểu thấu*
9. scholar ['skɔlə] (n) *học giả*
10. compel [kəm'pel] (v) *buộc phải, bắt buộc, thúc ép*
11. unconsciously [,ʌn'kɔnʃəsli] (adv) *không tự giác, vô tình, không có ý định, không có ý thức*
12. impart [im'pɑ:t] (v) *truyền đạt, kể cho hay, phổ biến*
13. systematic [,sistə'mætik] (adj) *có phương pháp*

DÀN Ý

Tầm quan trọng của các kỳ thi

- Giá trị của thi cử: giúp thí sinh tự chứng tỏ mình
- Thi cử ngày nay: để thành công không chỉ cần có khả năng ghi nhớ mà cả khả năng suy luận.
- Thi cử với các học giả: giúp trau dồi kiến thức một cách có hệ thống

38. A WEEK IN HOSPITAL

I had always dreaded[1] the thought of being admitted to hospital. The peculiar[2] smell of the hospital, the sight of deformed and critically[3] ill persons and dead bodies in the hospital are things that I had always wished to avoid. But a serious illness sometime ago necessitated[4] my admission to the General Hospital in Malacca.

Though I was seriously ill and required special attention, yet the knowledge that I was in the hospital made me feel miserable during the first few days. The clothes that I had to wear in the hospital were uncomfortable and the food was tasteless[5]. At night, when all the patients were asleep, I used to wake up and think of what might happen if the dead bodies in the mortuary[6] near by came back to life. I also thought of the patients who might die at anytime. Sometimes I thought that I myself might not wake up from my sleep; that I might have to leave my dear parents, brothers and sisters and never return. Tears would then flow from my eyes.

From the fourth day, however, my spirits were high. The doctors and nurses assured[7] me that I would recover completely in a few days and that I could move about in the hospital as I wished.

I now began to think of the good work that was being done in the hospital to reduce pain and suffering. Hundreds of sick people were coming to the hospital, many with serious injuries caused by various kinds of accidents, with the last hope of survival. And while many were dying, many more were returning home with smiles on their faces. Working every minute and sacrificing[8] their own pleasures and pastimes, the doctors, nurses, hospital assistants and all the other staffs were doing their utmost to save another life. Their humanity impressed me deeply. I

now realised what an important role the hospitals were playing in our daily life, and the disgust[9] that I fell on the first few days was gone.

After being in the hospital for a week, I returned home with a better knowledge of human misery and sacrifice.

NEW WORDS:

1. dread [dred] (v) *kinh hãi, kinh sợ*
2. peculiar [pi'kju:ljə] (adj) *lạ kỳ, riêng biệt*
3. critically ['kritikəli] (adv) *nguy kịch, trầm trọng*
4. necessitate [ni'sesiteit] *bắt phải, đòi hỏi phải, cần phải có*
5. tasteless ['teistlis] (adj) *vô vị, nhạt nhẽo*
6. mortuary ['mɔ:tʃəri; 'mɔ:tʃueri] (n) *nhà xác*
7. assure [ə'ʃuə, ə'ʃɔ:] (v) *quả quyết, cam đoan*
8. sacrifice ['sækrifais] (v) *hy sinh*
9. disgust [dis'gʌst] (n) *sự ghê tởm, sự kinh tởm*

DÀN Ý

Một tuần ở bệnh viện

- Những ngày đầu tiên ở bệnh viện với cảm giác sợ hãi và khổ sở
- Sự thay đổi trong suy nghĩ và cảm nhận về bệnh viện
- Lợi ích của bệnh viện – sự hy sinh của các bác sĩ, y tá

39. A FRIGHTENING EXPERIENCE

Trải qua một nỗi kinh hoàng

I am not one who is frightened[1] easily; but I must admit that one night I saw a figure that struck terror into my heart.

It was a moon-lit night[2]. I was returning home on foot from a town a few miles away. That was the first night in my life that I was out alone. The road along which I was walking was not used much at night. Even during the day, it was used only by those who worked in the rubber and banana plantations along that road. As I was walking, I could hear the noises made by squirrels, insects and owls. Creatures that love the night world such as bats were very active, and there were hundreds of

shadows. All these did not, however, frighten me. I held a stick in my hand and moved rapidly towards home for my dinner. Then, suddenly, I caught sigh of an old lady, a short distance away. Her head was covered with a white cloth, and she was waving to me.

Curious to know why she was there at that time of the night, I stopped for a while. As I stood there, however, vague[3] memories of stories about ghosts began to come back to my mind. I was soon gripped with fear and took to my heels. I ran as fast as I could, and when I reached home I could hardly speak.

On the next day, however, I visited that place again to make sure that the woman was indeed a real person and not a ghost. But I could find no footprints there. Only a banana plant stood there with its leaves moving in the breeze[4]. I realised then that it was the banana plant with its leaves moving in the breeze that looked like a woman waving her hand. I had indeed made a fool of myself; but after the previous[5] night's experience, this discovery was small relief to me.

NEW WORDS:

1. frighten ['fraitn] (v) *làm hoảng sợ, làm sợ*
2. moon-lit night ['mu:nlit nait] *đêm sáng trăng*
3. vague [veig] (adj) *mơ hồ, lờ mờ, mập mờ*
4. breeze [bri:z] (n) *gió nhẹ*
5. previous ['pri:viəs] (adj) *trước*

40. "FIRE IS A GOOD SERVANT, BUT A BAD MASTER". DISCUSS.

"Lửa là một người phục vụ tốt nhưng là một ông chủ tồi". Hãy thảo luận.

How man first learnt to use fire is still unknown, but it is known that even the most primitive man, centuries ago, found it to be of great service to him as it is to us today. Man, in his early days, did not cook his food. He ate everything raw, including meat and fish. But the discovery of fire changed his eating habits completely. He now learnt to cook his food; and, when he found that cooked food was more delicious, fire became an important thing in his life.

Fire also gave the early man warmth and light. Even in his scanty[1] clothes he could keep himself warm in his cave on rainy or cold nights. His cave was no longer dark and he could move about freely at night. Further, fire gave him protection from wild beasts, and his life was more secure than it was before. In fact, fire, like water and air, became indispensable[2] to man; and, today, we use fire for a diversity[3] of purposes. We use it even to operate machinery to produce goods.

But fire has to he kept under strict control, for its capacity to destroy his great. Once it is out of control[4], it will destroy life and property at tremendous[5] speed and the world has lost things worth millions of dollars because of fire. And, people often use fire's enormous capacity to great advantage. They use it to burn thousands of acres[6] of forest and grow crops. As a result, we now find green fields where once there were forests.

On the other hand, fire has been used by men, especially of the modern age, to destroy men. In every human battle in the past fire was used to destroy the enemy. Even today, thousands of people in many parts of the world are being destroyed by fire; and, when furious[7] men try to make the best use of fire's extreme anger, misery is hard to avoid. It then reigns supreme[8]. Innocent people, young and old, must die in thousands. It is, therefore, true to say that, "fire is a good servant, but a bad master".

NEW WORDS:

1. scanty ['skænti] (adj) *ít ỏi, thiếu, không đủ*
2. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *tuyệt đối cần thiết; không thể thiếu được*
3. diversity [dai'və:siti] (n) *tính đa dạng*
4. out of control *vượt ngoài tầm kiểm soát*
5. tremendous [tri'mendəs] (adj) *ghê gớm, kinh khủng, khủng khiếp, dữ dội*
6. acre ['eikə] (n) *mẫu Anh (khoảng 0,4 hecta)*
7. furious ['fjuəriəs] (adj) *giận dữ*
8. supreme [su:'pri:m] (adj) *tột đỉnh, tối cao*

41. AN ACCIDENT I HAVE WITNESSED

Một tai nạn mà tôi đã chứng kiến

One rainy day last year, while I was returning home from Mersing, a town in the east coast of Malaysia, I witnessed[1] an accident which I shall never forget.

I was returning home in my father's car. It was raining heavily and the road could not be seen clearly. My father, an old man, was driving slowly to avoid an accident. The journey, therefore, seemed unusually long, and I began to feel tired. Then, suddenly, a small car, running at great speed, overtook[2] our car. My father was shocked at the recklessness[3] of the driver of that car. We could not count the number of persons in that car, but were sure that there were at least five, including two children. My father at once predicted that tragedy[4] would befall the occupants[5] of the car. After this prediction I began to grow impatient. I did not wish to see any ugly scene resulting from an accident. Though the car had gone quite far its rear lights would still be seen.

In the distance there was a narrow bridge. Looking at the way the car was being driven, I too was now sure that an accident would occur, and sure enough it did occur. This is how it happened.

A lorry was coming from the opposite direction. It was already on the bridge. The driver of the small car, however, could not slow down in good time. He lost control of the car which skidded[6] and plunged into the swollen[7] river. Somehow, the driver managed to slip out of the car, but the others were doomed[8]. When we arrived at the bridge, we were touched deeply by what we saw. Two children were struggling[9] in the river and we could do nothing to save them. Their mother, as we came to know later, was at the bottom of the river, trapped in the car, and they were swept away by the rush of the current and drowned. The driver, and father of the children, began to cry piteously[10] for the wife and children he had lost so suddenly.

It was indeed a very touching scene, and I shall never forget this day.

NEW WORDS:

1. witness ['witnis] (v) *chứng kiến, làm chứng nhân cho*
2. overtake [,əʊvə'teik] (v) (overtook; overtaken) *bắt kịp, vượt*

3. recklessness ['reklisniš] (n) *tính thiếu thận trọng, tính hấp tấp, tính khinh suất, tính liều lĩnh*

4. tragedy ['trædʒədi] (n) *thảm kịch; bi kịch*

5. occupant ['ɒkjʊpənt] (n) *người sở hữu, người sử dụng*

6. skid [skid] (v) *trượt (xe, bánh xe)*

7. swollen ['swəʊlən] (adj) *dâng lên cao; phình ra, căng ra*

8. doomed ['du:md] (adj) *phải chịu số phận bi đát*

9. struggle ['strʌgl] (v) *vùng vẫy, vật lộn*

10. piteously ['pitiəsli] (adv) *thảm thương, đáng thương hại*

42. THE IMPORTANCE OF GOOD ROADS IN A COUNTRY

Tầm quan trọng của những con đường tốt trong một quốc gia

Good roads are essential for the development of a country. The Romans realised this centuries ago, and wherever they established[1] themselves, they tried to improve the roads there. Today, the governments of all countries in the world are building more and more roads to gain access to the remotest regions of their countries.

Roads link towns and villages and enable the people of one place to communicate with the people of another place. When food is scarce[2] in one place, it can be brought from another place without much difficulty. Even things which cannot be produced in one region can be brought from another region where they are produced in abundance[3]. The invention of motor-vehicles has made it easy to transport goods from place to place. But these vehicles require good roads to travel quickly, and the better the roads the more goods can be transported from one place to another in a very short time. Thus, trade is improved.

Further, good roads help people to travel easily to places where they can work and develop their lands and industries. In Malaysia, for example, the improvement of roads has made it easy for skilled workers from the towns to work in remote villages. The people of the villages, on the other hand, have been able to learn much from the towns. As a result, there has been a lot of improvement in this country in all spheres[4] of activity.

Finally, in times of war good roads help armies to move about without difficulty. Sometimes, a country is defeated[5] because its army is not able

to reach a place in good time owing to bad roads. Even the police may not be able to reach a place where there is some trouble if the roads are bad. For all these reasons, it is always necessary for a country to have good roads.

NEW WORDS:

1. establish [is'tæbliʃ] (v) *lập, thành lập, thiết lập, kiến lập*
2. scarce [skeəs] (adj) *khan hiếm*
3. abundance [ə'bʌndəns] (n) *nhiều, dư dật, giàu có, phong phú*
4. sphere [sfiə] (n) *lĩnh vực, phạm vi; tầm ảnh hưởng*
5. defeat [di'fi:t] (v) *đánh bại, làm thất bại*

43. LIFE IN THE VILLAGE

Cuộc sống của thôn quê

The village has always been known to be a place of peace and quiet. The scattered[1] houses among hundreds of plants and trees at once indicate the lack of activity in the village.

The workers in the village leave their homes early in the morning to work in the plantations or towns near by. Some have their own plantations, and some make certain articles[2] in their homes to sell them in the towns. A few of the villagers, including women, go out to catch fish in the streams and rivers found in the village. Though the people of the village do not usually earn much, yet they seem to be contented[3].

In the afternoon, most of the villagers are at home. Some of them take a nap[4] after lunch; some work in their small gardens, and some visit the small shops in the village. In various parts of the village children may be seen playing the popular games of the village. Occasionally, a cyclist[5] passes by.

Then, in the evening, the villagers meet one another. Some play cards and other types of games peculiar to the village. Some talk about the day's incidents in the village, and those whose minds go beyond the village discuss world events.

In almost every village there is a headman[6] whose duty is to settle quarrels among the villagers and maintain peace in the village. Whenever there is a dispute[7], the villagers go to the headman who is held in such esteem[8] that his word has the force or law. In this way the villagers have

developed their own simple laws, and the crimes of cities are almost unknown to the people of the village.

During a festival, the whole village is alive with activities. Everyone is in a happy mood[9] and plays his part to make the festival a success. This is the time for the men, women and children of the village to wear their best clothes and the village is full of colour.

These simple ways of life in the village, however, must soon change. Progress in science and education has already begun to affect the outlook of the people in the village, and hundreds are leaving the village to seek their fortunes[10] in the towns and cities.

NEW WORDS:

1. scattered ['skætəd] (adj) *lác đác; lưa thưa; rải rác*
2. article ['ɑ:tikl] (n) *hàng, vật phẩm, đồ đạc*
3. contented [kən'tentid] (adj) *thoả mãn, mãn nguyện*
4. nap [næp] (n) *giấc ngủ trưa; giấc chợp mắt*
   take a nap after lunch *ngủ một giấc sau bữa ăn trưa*
5. cyclist ['saiklist] (n) *người đi xe đạp*
6. headman ['hedmæn] (n) *trưởng làng; già làng; tù trưởng*
7. dispute [dis'pju:t] (n) *cuộc bàn cãi, cuộc tranh luận*
8. esteem [is'ti:m] (n) *sự kính mến, sự quý trọng*
9. mood [mu:d] (adj) *tâm trạng; tính khí, tâm tính, tính tình*
10. fortune ['fɔ:tʃu:n] (n) *vận may*

44. MY FAVOURITE AUTHOR

Tác giả mà tôi ưa thích nhất

My favourite[1] author is William Shakespeare, a man who has written enough for immortality[2].

Though a few hundred years have elapsed3 since the death of Shakespeare and volumes have been written on the life and work of this great writer, his early life still remains a subject for speculation[4] and conjecture[5]. It is generally believed that Shakespeare had very little schooling. Yet his keen intellect and mastery of language have earned for him the appreciation and applause[6] of the literary world.

Shakespeare's fame, I think, originates from his ability to identify his readers with the characters in his stories. In most of his stories we find reflections of our own experiences. This shows strikingly that Shakespeare had an insight into human nature and the problems of life. His tragedies such as "Macbeth" and "Hamlet" clearly show his deep knowledge of the human mind. Man's ambition[7], desperation, sorrows, frustrations[8] and hopes are dealt with in these tragedies with such skill that the reader himself experiences all the mental conflicts[9] and emotions, and thus gets a better idea about human nature. With equal skill, Shakespeare deals with man's joys and pleasures in all his comedies. His comedies like, "Twelfth Night" and "As You Like It", are a delight to read. Through the characters in his stories Shakespeare conveys his views on life and the world. Most of his characters, such as Hamlet, are vehicles for moral instruction. Man's nature is the theme[10] of all his writings. By a skilful combination[11] of words and situations, he reveals[12] the worst as well as the best in man. His choice of words is masterly[13] and many of his phrases are literary gems[14]. As man's nature is his theme, what he wrote years ago remains true even today, and it will remain so till the end of time. It is for all these reasons that I enjoy reading Shakespeare.

However, I do enjoy reading the works of other writers too, such as those of Charles Dickens and Jane Austen. But they do not give the satisfaction that Shakespeare gives. I find Shakespeare's stories so interesting that I have read the same stories several times in last few years; and, every time I read the same story, I learn something new about human nature. Shakespeare was indeed a genius[15].

NEW WORDS:

1. favourite ['feivərit] (adj) *được mến chuộng nhất, được ưa thích nhất*
2. immortality [,imɔ:'tæliti] (n) *bất tử, bất diệt, bất hủ; danh tiếng muôn thuở*
3. elapse [i'læps] (v) *(nói về thời gian) trôi qua*
4. speculation [,spekju'leiʃn] (n) *sự nghiên cứu; sự suy xét*
5. conjecture [kən'dʒektʃə] (n) *sự phỏng đoán*
6. applause [ə'plɔ:z] (n) *sự hoan nghênh, sự tán thưởng*
7. ambition [æm'biʃn] (n) *hoài bão, tham vọng*

8. frustration [frʌs'treiʃn] *sự làm thất bại; tâm trạng vỡ mộng*
9. conflict ['kɔnflikt] (adj) *sự xung đột; cuộc xung đột*
10. theme [θi:m] (n) *đề tài, chủ đề*
11. combination [,kɔmbi'neiʃn] (n) *sự kết hợp; sự phối hợp*
12. reveal [ri'vi:l] (n) *bộc lộ, biểu lộ; phát hiện, khám phá*
13. masterly ['mɑ:stəli] (adj) *rất giỏi, bậc thầy, tài tình*
14. gem [dʒem] (n) *đá quý; viên ngọc*
15. genius ['dʒi:niəs] (n) *người thiên tài, người anh tài, bậc kỳ tài*

45. THE VALUE OF HIGHER EDUCATION

Giá trị của việc nâng cao trình độ học vấn

Since the dawn of civilization[1], great thinkers like Plato and Aristotle have been doing their utmost to spread education to the remotest corners of the earth. It is realised that education develops the intellect and enables one to discriminate[2] between the good and the bad. More and more universities and other education institutions[3] are therefore being opened in all parts of the world to provide higher education.

In almost every country today, there is a lot of unemployment. Only those who have received a high standard of education are able to secure high positions in society and in the various professions. It has therefore become necessary for many people to attend institutions or higher learning to improve their prospects of employment.

Higher education confers many other benefits. It broadens the mind and increases one's powers of thinking, reasoning and imagination. Further, it makes one more sympathetic towards others. It helps us to understand the problems and weaknesses of man, and we become less suspicious[4] of strangers and others. We also become more thoughtful of the feelings and needs of others. As a result, we are able to mix better with people. Besides, higher education helps us greatly in deciding what is right and what is wrong, what is true and what is false. Therefore, people can hardly deceive or mislead[5] us. Higher education also teaches us how to spend our leisure moments. We learn to make the best use of our spare time. Even during old age we know how to keep ourselves occupied. Again, higher education develops self-confidence[6]. We learn to have faith in our own abilities. As a result, we are able to meet and talk with people anywhere. All these qualities, acquired through higher

education, combine[7] to make one a leader among men. One is able to live a better life in society.

The benefits of education are therefore many, and everyone should try his best to acquire the highest of education, either by attendance at an educational institution or by private studies.

NEW WORDS:

1. civilization [,sivəlai'zeiʃn;,sivəli'zeiʃn] (n) *nền văn minh; sự khai hóa*
2. discriminate [dis'krimineit] (v) *phân biệt*
3. institution [,insti'tju:ʃn] (n) *cơ quan, tổ chức*
4. suspicious [sə'spiʃəs] (aj) *nghi ngờ, tỏ ra có sự nghi ngờ*
5. mislead [mis'li:d] (v) *làm cho mê muội, làm cho lầm đường lạc lối*
6. self-confidence [,self'kɔnfidəns] (n) *sự tự tin; lòng tự tin*
7. combine [kɔm'bain] (v) *phối hợp, kết hợp*

46. THE RAINY SEASON

Mùa mưa

When the grass dry, the trees have lost their leaves, the rivers have very little water in them and the fields are parched[1], everyone prays for the coming of rain. But when it continues to rain for several days, there are prayers everywhere for the rain to stop, for heavy and continuous rain often causes great hardship to many people, especially in the equatorial[2] region. The rainy season is therefore welcomed at times, and at other times, it is hated.

In equatorial countries like Malaysia, the rainy season often causes much damage to crops, life and property. People who work in the paddy-fields, rubber and other plantations have to stop their work for sometime. As a result, they lose income and suffer hardship. Farmers too suffer as they have to stop selling vegetables and poultry[3] for a few days. Even school children experience a lot of inconvenience[4]. They find it difficult to go to school in comfort and ease. Some places are completely under water and many children are unable to go to school. Sometimes the schools have to be closed. Even to go to the market becomes a problem, and people cannot go out to enjoy or do any work.

Continuous rain during the rainy season also causes much illness among children and adults. Sometimes many children are drowned in the floods caused by heavy rains. Bridges and houses are swept away by the floods and there is much suffering.

But if the rains are not heavy, the rainy season can bring a lot of joy to farmers and others. Rains bring water for our crops and for use in our homes. Light rains make the day cool and pleasant and people find it easy to work in the fields and other places. The soil remains moist[5]. Plants and flowers grow easily to make our gardens beautiful. Vegetables too grow well and markets are full of green vegetables. Even animals, like cows and goats find enough grass to eat. There is also enough water for them to drink.

Yet, those who live in places where there is a lot of rainfall do not realise how fortunate they are. Only those who live in the hot deserts realise the value of rainfall. They would surely welcome the rainy season.

NEW WORDS:

1. parch [pɑ:tʃ] (v) *khô nẻ; rang, nung*
2. equatorial [,ekwə'tɔ:riəl] (adj) *(thuộc) xích đạo; gần xích đạo*
3. poultry ['pəʊltri] (n) *gia cầm, gà vịt; thịt gia cầm, thịt gà, thịt vịt*
4. inconvenience [,inkən'vi:njəns] (adj) *sự bất tiện, sự phiền phức*
5. moist [mɔist] (adj) *ẩm; ẩm ướt, ướt lấp nhấp*

47. THE IMPORTANCE OF WATER

Tầm quan trọng của nước

Since the beginning of time, water has continued to be an important thing to all living things. Without water nothing could live. We may change our food according to the climate of a place but we find no substitute[1] for water. Man has always looked for pure fresh water to slake[2] his thirst.

Water not only quenches[3] our thirst but it is also a source of food to us. From the sea we catch large quantities of fish and other creatures. We use water to irrigate[4] our lands to produce crops. Many parts of the world are dry and barren[5] because there is no water there. People in such places lead a very hard life. Even the plants and animals find it a real struggle to survive. They can obtain water only by some means of ingenuity[6]. Water also helps to increase the fertility[7] of the land in several parts of the

world. The alluvium[8] that is brought down by rivers is very fertile and it yields[9] large quantities of crops. Even electricity, which has changed our lives completely, is produced by water-power in many countries.

Further, water is an important means of communication. We use waterways to carry our goods or trade. Water transport is cheaper than land transport and in many remote regions, rivers are the only means of communication. In many countries rivers are used to bring down timber from the hilly regions to the lower regions where the timber mills[10] are. In this way much money is saved.

It is true, however, that water has also caused much destruction to life and property throughout human history. Heavy rainfall, swollen rivers and the angry waves of the sea have killed thousands of people and destroyed homes and crops. Yet, water is indispensable[11] to life, and people everywhere are trying their best to bring water to places where it is scarce, to control its flow in times of floods and to make greater use of it.

NEW WORDS:

1. substitute ['sʌbstitju:t] (n) *vật thay thế; người thay thế*
2. slake [sleik] (v) *làm nhẹ, làm dịu (đau đớn); làm nguôi*
3. quench [kwentʃ] (v) *làm hết khát*
4. irrigate ['irigeit] (v) *tưới, làm ướt đất.*
5. barren ['bærən] (adj) *cằn cỗi*
6. ingenuity [,indʒi'nju:iti] (n) *tài khéo léo; tính chất khéo léo*
7. fertility [fə:'tiliti] (n) *tình trạng màu mỡ*
8. alluvium [ə'lu:vjəm] (n) *đất phù sa, bồi tích, đất bồi*
9. yield [ji:ld] (v) *mang lại, sinh ra; sản xuất*
10. timber mill ['timbə mil] (n) *xưởng gỗ*
11. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *tuyệt đối cần thiết; không thể thiếu được*

48. DESCRIBE WHAT YOU SAW AND ENJOYED DURING A VISIT TO A ZOO

Hãy mô tả bạn đã xem và thích những gì khi đi thăm sở thú

As one who loves animals, I once paid a visit to the zoo in Kuala Lumpur, one of the largest I have ever seen. I liked everything there so much that I shall never forget that visit.

I visited the zoo on a Sunday together with a few of my friends. After leaving our homes early in the morning we reached the zoo before noon. We then bought our tickets and entered the zoo.

The first thing that impressed me, as we entered the zoo, was its size and beauty. I could hardly believe that a zoo could be so large. In beauty too it was one of the best places that I had ever seen. I saw many kinds of plants and flowers all round. I also saw some lakes in which ducks of various kinds were swimming. I then noted that the cages of the animals in this zoo are separated from one another, which makes one's visit more interesting. After visiting one cage the visitor has to walk a short distance to reach the next cage. In this way one has to spend more time resting here and there to visit all the cages. Walking round the zoo therefore becomes more interesting.

My friends and I, however, visited the monkeys first. They were of various types from different parts of the world. They were all very active, though they had been confined[1] to their cages for a long time. Then, we went to the places where the tigers and the lions were kept. These animals did not seem to be active like the monkeys. They were all lying down and looking at the visitors without any interest. I was a little surprised at their coolness[2].

After that we saw the other animals, reptiles[3] and birds. Their variety was amazing. We were all deeply interested in their behaviour and movements within their cages.

Then, alter spending several hours in the zoo, we went out and had a refreshing drink of coconut water[4]. After that we returned home, feeling very happy.

NEW WORDS:

1. confine [kən'faind] (adj) *bị giới hạn; hạn chế*

2. coolness ['ku:lnis] (n) *sự trầm tĩnh, sự bình tĩnh; sự lãnh đạm, sự không sốt sắng, sự không nhiệt tình*

3. reptile ['reptail] (n) *loài bò sát, lớp bò sát*

4. coconut water ['kəʊkənʌt 'wɔ:tə] (n) *nước dừa*

49. THE THINGS I DISLIKE THE MOST

Những điều tôi ghét nhất

There are many things that most people dislike. The things that I dislike the most are noise, crowds and laziness[1].

Noise disturbs me greatly. This is why I do not like to live in a city where noise predominates[2]. From dawn till mid-night, vehicles run to and fro[3] in the city to make the place extremely noisy. The noise is further increased by the voices of thousands of people engaged in all kinds of activity and the sounds of other things such as busy factories and machines. For this reason, the very thought of going to a city, even for a short visit, is distasteful[4] to me.

In the same way, I also dislike crowds. Crowds make movement difficult. If a place is crowded, it is not easy to move about or do any work. If we are in a hurry to go somewhere, a crowd can delay our progress.

A crowd can also interfere[5] with our enjoyment of sights and visits. For example, if we go with others to places like the museum and the zoo, we may not be able to enjoy looking at the things around because of the constant[6] fear of losing sight of the others with us, especially if they are small.

Finally, I dislike laziness because I feel that a lazy person is always a burden[7] not only to his parents but also to others. By refusing to do any work he compels[8] others to work for his comforts. Sometimes even a weak and poor person has to struggle to provide for a strong and healthy man who will not exert himself only because he is lazy. Such a person is certainly inconsiderate[9] and ill-mannered towards others. As long as he gets what he needs and wants, he does not care what others think of him. I hate to see such a person, even if he is my own brother or father.

These arguments[10] explain why I hate the things that I mentioned above.

NEW WORDS:

1. laziness ['leizinis] (n) *sự lười biếng, sự biếng nhác*

2. predominate [pri'dɔmineit] (v) *chiếm ưu thế, vượt trội*
3. run to and fro (r) *đi đi lại lại*
4. distasteful [dis'teistful] (adj) *khó chịu; không vừa ý*
5. interfere [,intə'fiə] (v) *gây trở ngại*
6. constant ['kɔnstənt] (adj) *không ngớt, không dứt, liên miên*
7. burden ['bə:dn] (n) *gánh nặng*
8. compel [kəm'pel] (v) *bắt buộc, ép, thúc ép*
9. inconsiderate [,inkən'sidərit] (adj) *thiếu ân cần, thiếu chu đáo, thiếu quan tâm*
10. argument ['ɑ:gjumənt] (n) *lý lẽ, luận cứ*

50. HOW I SPEND MY TIME AFTER SCHOOL

Tôi sử dụng thời gian sau giờ học như thế nào

As I am now preparing[1] for an important examination which will be held at the end of this year, I spend most of my time reading my books. There are, however, a few other things that I sometimes do during my leisure[2].

As soon as I reach home everyday after school, I have my lunch quickly in order to have as much time as possible to read my books. Eating quickly is not good for health but I have to pass my examination. Therefore, the more I am able to read the more certain I can be of passing my examination. It is for this reason that I read my books for about two hours after lunch everyday.

After reading in the afternoon, I have my bath and then a cup of tea. Having done these, I go out to my friend's house near by and discuss our lessons for about an hour with my friend. Sometimes we go for a walk and as we do so, we talk mainly about our lessons. My friend is very good at her lessons and she explains many of the things that I do not understand clearly in school.

Sometimes, however, I remain at home to help my mother in the kitchen, especially if we expect some visitors. I must admit that I enjoy doing such work, as it helps me to learn how to prepare a good meal. I have already learned how to make some delicious[3] cakes by helping my mother.

Then, there are times when I spend some time working in our vegetable garden. My parents have planted many varieties of vegetables, and I help them to water the plants so that they may grow well.

Further, I also spend some time decorating[4] my house, when I feel that things in my house have become too dull to look at.

At night, I study my lesson again, and go to bed late after dinner. Thus, my time after school is spent in a variety of way.

NEW WORDS:

1. prepare [pri'peə] (v) *chuẩn bị*
2. leisure ['leʒə] (n) *thời gian rỗi*
3. delicious [di'liʃəs] (adj) *thơm tho, ngon ngọt*
4. decorate ['dekəreit] (v) *trang hoàng, trang trí*

51. DESCRIBE THE THINGS YOU ENJOY DOING

Hãy mô tả những điều mà bạn thích làm

I do many things everyday, but the things I enjoy doing most are picking[1] flowers and preparing my school lessons.

As a girl of fourteen years of age, I help my mother everyday. My mother is a very religious[2] lady. Every evening, before her prayers, I go out in search of flowers which she needs during her prayers. I must admit that looking for flowers around my house is a very pleasant exercise. I go to all our neighbours' gardens where a great variety of flowers can be found. Our neighbours are very kind and they allow me to pick as many flowers as I like.

As I look at the flowers, I fell extremely happy. They are so beautiful and colourful that they make the gardens the best place to visit in our area. Once I am in these gardens I spend a long time to pick flowers because of the sheer[3] pleasure of walking inside the gardens. Then, I return to the house with the best flowers that grow in these gardens, and my mother is always happy to see them. Thus, I must say that I enjoy picking flowers very much.

Preparing my school lessons also gives me a lot of pleasure. As I prepare them, I learn many things about the world and its affairs, past and present. I also learn about the people around us as well as those who

are thousands of miles away in different lands across the oceans. Further, I learn more and more new words and phrases which help me to express my own thoughts and feelings better. Besides, the knowledge that I acquire while preparing my lessons helps me to meet and talk with people with greater confidence[4]. It is for these reasons that I like to prepare my lessons.

Thus, the things that I like to do most not only amuse my mind but also contribute to the extension[5] of my knowledge.

NEW WORDS:

1. pick [pik] (v) *hái (hoa)*
2. religious [ri'lidʒəs] (adj) *sùng đạo, mộ đạo, ngoan đạo*
3. sheer [ʃiə] (adj) *hoàn toàn, đơn thuần*
4. confidence ['kɔnfidəns] (n) *sự tin cậy; sự quả quyết*
5. extension [iks'tenʃn] (n) *sự mở rộng*

52. EXPRESS YOUR OPINION ON THE IMPORTANCE OF STUDYING GEOGRAPHY

Hãy trình bày quan điểm của bạn về tầm quan trọng của việc nghiên cứu địa lý

Geography[1] is a fascinating subject. It reveals all the wonderful changes and activities that have been going on in the world since the beginning of time.

By reading geography we learn not only about our own country but also about countries beyond the seas. We also learn about the mountains, oceans, islands, lakes, volcanoes[2], the winds and a number of other very interesting things about the world and the universe[3].

Among the important things that we learn in Geography are the infinite varieties of creatures, plants, birds and land features that exist in the world. We know that there are millions of creatures, small and large, of various kinds in all parts of the earth. We also know that many of the early creatures have now become extinct, while many of them have changed from their original forms. Reading about all these is indeed very interesting.

We also learn about the various types of plants and birds that exist throughout the world. The plants and birds in the cold lands are not the same as those in warmer lands. In the same way, the land forms in the cold regions are different from those in other regions. In the equatorial regions, for example, plant and animal life is luxuriant[4], while in the poles the land is covered with snow, and animal and plant life is less abundant[5]. In equatorial regions abundant rain has produced large rivers and lakes, while in areas where little rain falls there are large deserts without many rivers and lakes.

As the climate and vegetation[6] of one place are not the same as those of another, the habits and activities of the people of different regions are also different. Even their religious convictions[7] and languages are different from those of other parts of the world.

Thus, Geography is a very important subject, and because of its width and variety it is one of the most interesting subjects to read.

NEW WORDS

1. geography [dʒi'ɔgrəfi] (n) *địa lý học*
2. volcano [vɔl'keinou] (n) *núi lửa*
3. universe ['ju:nivə:s] (n) *vũ trụ, vạn vật*
4. luxuriant [lʌg'zjuəriənt] (adj) *phong phú, phồn thịnh; um tùm*
5. abundant [ə'bʌndənt] (adj) *nhiều, phong phú, dồi dào*
6. vegetation [,vedʒi'teiʃn] (n) *thực vật, cây cối; thảm thực vật*
7. conviction [kən'vikʃn] (n) *sự nhận thức thấy tội lỗi*

53. THE IMPORTANCE OF RIVERS

Tầm quan trọng của sông ngòi

Rivers have been very useful to men in all parts of the earth since very early times. They provide water to slake the thirst[1] of men, to fertilize their lands and to provide a means of communication for the goods that they transport from place to place.

Early civilization[2] began on the banks[3] of the great rivers of the world, such as the Nile and the Indus. These rivers provided the water the people on their banks needed for all their purposes. As people in those early days did not have the transport facilities[4] that we have today,

they had to live close to the rivers to transport their goods to places along the rivers and to draw the water that they needed.

Rivers not only provided water for their domestic[5] needs and agricultural purposes but also enabled the people to move from place to place along their banks. Boats or rafts[6] were used to travel from one end of a river to another. In the same way, goods were also transported. With the transport of goods and the contacts of people between different parts of the same river there were also many cultural exchanges. Thus, rivers helped to spread civilization.

It is true, however, that rivers have also caused much misery and unhappiness to millions of people throughout history. They have caused floods and destroyed lives and property in all parts of the earth. For example, the Hwang Ho in China has been described as "the sorrow of China" because of the destruction that it had caused in the past.

But it should be realised that floods occur once in several years. Therefore, the damage that rivers cause is not so great as the benefits that they confer on humanity. Today, rivers continue to be used not only as a source of water for drinking and fertilizing the lands or as a means of transport but also as a source of electricity which has revolutionized[7] society.

The importance of rivers is therefore not difficult to appreciate[8].

NEW WORDS:

1. slake the thirst (v) *làm giảm cơn khát, đỡ khát*
2. civilization [,sivəlai'zeiʃn;,sivəli'zeiʃn] (n) *nền văn minh*
3. bank [bæŋk] (n) *bờ sông*
4. facilities [fə'silitiz] (n) *điều kiện dễ dàng, thuận lợi; tiện nghi*
5. domestic [də'mestik] (adj) *trong nhà, trong gia đình*
6. raft [rɑ:ft] (n) *bè, mảng; bè gỗ*
7. revolutionize [,revə'lu:ʃənaiz] (v) *cách mạng hoá*
8. appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit] (v) *đánh giá đúng, đánh giá cao, hiểu rõ giá trị, thưởng thức*

54. THE VALUE OF BOOKS

Giá trị của sách.

Deep in the heart of every good book lies the distilled[1] wisdom of centuries. To read it is to become wiser.

Books are written for the benefit and pleasure of all those who like to read them. But they are of various types. There are books for children, as well as for adults. Some books are written for the specialists[2], some are written for students in the schools and universities, and many are written just for the pleasures of the mind. Indeed, the variety of books is infinite.

One of the reasons for the existence of such a wide variety of books is that the field of knowledge is very extensive. Even to grasp a small part of it, one has to read several books for many years. Another reason is that different people have different likes and dislikes. The book that one likes to read, the other may not like. To meet these broad and varying[3] needs of people for information, knowledge, recreation and aesthetic[4] enjoyment, more and more books are being written every year.

Those who aim to specialize in a certain branch of knowledge concentrate more on the books that provide information on their particular field[5] of study. In the libraries and book shops they look mainly for such books. But those who have no particular interest in any subject read and buy all types of books. Sometimes they buy books intended for the specialist, sometimes they buy those written for children, and sometimes if they are preparing for some examination, they buy books which give some information on their examination subjects.

Almost every book extends the knowledge of the reader and develops his intellect[6] as well. Even if the reader does not learn any new facts from the book, he may at least[7] learn a few new words, expressions or ideas. In fact, certain books are written mainly to acquaint the reader with the beauty of language and ideas. They do not deal with facts or actual human experiences. Books of this type provide great pleasure to the mind, and almost everyone who loves reading buys a few of such books.

Books have also helped to promote[8] better understanding among the peoples of the world. By reading books, the people of one country have come to know about the achievements[9] of those in other countries.

Thus, books could be regarded as one of the channels[10] of communication among men. Indeed, without books man would not have

made so much progress as he has made today. By applying the knowledge that he has gained from books to practical purposes, he has made the world a pleasant place to live in. Civilization therefore owes a great debt to these inanimate[11] things called books.

NEW WORDS:

1. distil [dis'til] (v) *đúc kết; chưng cất*
2. specialist ['speʃəlist] (n) *chuyên gia, chuyên viên*
3. varying ['veəriiŋ] (adj) *hay thay đổi, hay biến đổi; không ổn định*
4. aesthetic [i:s'θetik] (adj) *(thuộc) mỹ học, thẩm mỹ*
5. field [fi:ld] (n) *lĩnh vực, phạm vi*
6. intellect ['intəlekt] (n) *trí tuệ; trí năng*
7. at least [æt li:st] *ít nhất; tối thiểu*
8. promote [prə'məʊt] (v) *thúc đẩy, khích lệ, xúc tiến, đẩy mạnh*
9. achievement [ə'tʃi:vmənt] (n) *thành tích, thành tựu*
10. channel ['tʃænl] (n) *kênh; nguồn (thông tin, tin tức...)*
11. inanimate [in'ænimit] (adj) *vô tri vô giác*

55. DO YOU THINK THAT PHYSICAL EDUCATION IS IMPORTANT?

Bạn có nghĩ rằng giáo dục thể chất là quan trọng không?

The value of physical[1] education has been realized since the earliest times of human existence. The Greeks and the Romans considered it indispensable[2] to the development of a good personality and character.

Today, in all the schools and universities in the world, a great deal emphasis[3] is being placed on physical education as a means of producing citizens of good character and personality.

Physical education develops the muscles[4] of the body scientifically and increases muscular activity and physical strength. All this makes the body active and efficient. It is now also realized that there is a close connection between the body and the mind. Therefore, if the body is active, the mind too is active. Proof[5] of this can be easily found among children. Children who are inactive[6] physically are usually also mentally lazy. An active and efficient body is a healthy body. When the body is healthy, the mind too is and therefore happy. Thus, physical education

contributes greatly to the health and happiness of an individual[7]. Such an individual could do a great deal for the good of society.

Physical education can also contribute to the strength of a nation. If the youths of a country receive proper physical education, they can build up a strong country to protect itself from foreign attacks or invasions[8].

Further, physical education provides opportunities[9] for contacts with people of other lands. Athletes[10] of all countries meet at various countries at various times to compete with one another and thus promote common understanding among countries for the benefit of one another.

It is, therefore, not without reason that physical education has been a part and parcel[11] of academic pursuit[12] today. I do therefore agree that physical education is important to all people.

NEW WORDS:

1. physical ['fizikl] (adj) *(thuộc) thể chất*
2. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *tuyệt đối cần thiết*
3. emphasis ['emfəsis] (n) *sự nhấn mạnh, tầm quan trọng*
4. muscle ['mʌsl] (n) *bắp thịt, cơ*
5. proof [pru:f] (n) *chứng cứ; bằng chứng*
6. inactive [in'æktiv] (adj) *không hoạt động, thiếu hoạt động*
7. individual [,indi'vidjuəl] (adj) *cá nhân*
8. invasion [in'veiʒn] (n) *sự xâm lược, sự xâm chiếm*
9. opportunity [,ɔpə'tju:niti] (adj) *cơ hội, thời cơ*
10. athlete ['æθli:t] (n) *vận động viên; lực sĩ*
11. part and parcel [pɑ:t ənd 'pɑ:s(ə)l] *thành phần không thể thiếu*
12. pursuit [pə'sju:t] (n) *sự theo đuổi; nghề nghiệp hoặc hoạt động*

56. THE IMPORTANCE OF READING NEWSPAPERS

Tầm quan trọng của việc đọc báo

As the name suggests newspapers are a source of news and information. In several respects[1] they are also a medium[2] of communication among the peoples of the world.

Today there are hundreds of newspapers all over the world. Everywhere there is a keen[3] desire to learn more and more about the

affairs of the world. This is partly the result of the spread of education which sharpens one's curiosity to learn about distant lands.

As a source of news, the newspaper is almost indispensable to those whose thirst for knowledge is insatiable[4]. They contain news on events in distant corners of the earth. Information about such events arrives almost immediately. As a result, people everywhere are informed about the most important events in the world very quickly and almost at the same time. For example, if a war breaks out in one part of the world today, the people in the other parts will certainly come to know about it tomorrow. As a result, all the countries of the world are able to do something quickly to help those who have suffered because of the war or to persuade the countries at war to cease[5] fighting.

Newspapers also play an important part in keeping the peoples of the world informed about the troubles that might arise in the future, if nothing is done to prevent them from happening. For example, if a dispute arises[6] between two countries for any reason, the newspapers can keep the peoples of the world informed about what might happen if nothing is done to persuade the two countries to resolve their differences peacefully. In this way many wars have been avoided because of the intervention[7] of some countries in the disputes of many countries which were given prominence[8] in newspapers.

When all this is considered, we feel that there is some silent communication among countries through the medium of newspapers for the common benefit of the countries of the world.

Further, constant reading of newspapers improves one's outlook on life and makes one a more reasonable person. The importance of the newspaper is therefore obvious.

NEW WORDS:

1. respect [ri'spekt] (n) phương diện, khía cạnh
2. medium ['mi:diəm] (n) phương tiện
3. keen [ki:n] (adj) mãnh liệt, thiết tha, nhiệt tình
4. insatiable [in'seiʃəbl] (adj) không thể thoả mãn được
5. cease [si:s] (v) dừng, ngừng, ngớt, tạnh
6. arise [ə'raiz] (v) xuất hiện, nảy sinh ra, xảy ra
7. intervention [,intə'venʃn] (n) sự can thiệp, sự xen vào
8. prominence ['prɔminəns] (n) sự nổi bật, sự đáng chú ý

57. "WATER IS IMPORTANT FOR ALL LIVING THINGS". Do you agree or disagree? Give reasons for your opinion

"Nước rất quan trọng cho mọi sinh vật". Bạn có đồng ý hay không? Nêu những lý do giải thích quan điểm của bạn

Without water no living thing on the earth could survive. We need water to quench[1] our thirst, water our lands to grow crops or to keep the animals and fowls[2] in our homes alive. Even the plants and insects in all parts of the world need water to live.

We also need water to produce electricity and to carry our goods or trade. Electricity is very important for our comforts today. Almost everything that we use in our homes today depends on the use of electricity. In the same way, water also helps to transport many or the goods that we need for our homes. Ships, rafts and boats carry many things from distant lands and help to exchange goods between one country and another. Transport by water is easier and cheaper than by air or land.

But water has also caused much sorrow and hardship in all parts of the world. Floods and heavy rains have destroyed crops, lives and property through the centuries and caused much sorrow everywhere.

Yet, water is so important that all living things, including the tiniest of creatures, will continue to struggle to get it whenever or wherever they can.

NEW WORDS:

1. quench [kwentʃ] (v) *làm hết khát*
2. fowl [faʊl] (n) *chim, gà*

58. THE VALUE OF EDUCATION

Giá trị của nền giáo dục

Briefly[1], education means the acquisition[2] of knowledge and abilities, and the development of one's character and mental powers by systematic training and instruction. Education is therefore of great value to any person.

It has been realized that a person without education is deprived[3] of many benefits. He not only lacks the knowledge of human affairs but

also the ability to appreciate the value of many of the things that concern his own welfare. Thus, he is not able to contribute his full share to the progress of society and the world. Neither is he able to develop his personality to the fullest extent.

One of the greatest benefits of education is that it helps a person to understand the position that he occupies in society. It helps him to speak and conduct himself with confidence and dignity[4] which earn him the respect and admiration of others. Thus, he occupies an important position in society, and people look up to him as their leader.

Another benefit of education today is that it helps one to secure lucrative[5] employment. In the world of today, almost every kind of employment requires some understanding of a few basic principles of science, mathematics, economics, engineering, accountancy[6] or some other subjects on the part of the worker. Thus, the better education a person has better prospects[7] he has of securing attractive positions in the various professions.

Finally, education makes a person sympathetic and considerate towards others. He is helpful to those who need his advice and guidance, and is not critical of those who commit offences[8] or mistakes out of ignorance[9] or necessity. Further, he does not like to hurt the feelings of others. Even if he is extremely provoked[10], he tries to express his displeasure or anger in words which give the slightest offence to others and yet express his outraged feelings adequately[11].

As a result of all these qualities that a person acquires through education, he becomes a very pleasant person to associate[12] with. He thus lives a fuller life in socially.

NEW WORDS:

1. briefly ['bri:fli] (adv) *một cách vắn tắt, ngắn gọn*
2. acquisition [,ækwi'ziʃn] (n) *sự được, sự giành được, sự thu được, sự đạt được*
3. deprive [di'praiv] (v) *lấy đi, tước đi*
4. dignity ['digniti] (n) *phẩm giá; phẩm cách; lòng tự trọng; chân giá trị*
5. lucrative ['lu:krətiv] (adj) *có lợi, sinh lợi*
6. accountancy [ə'kaʊntənsi] (n) *nghề kế toán*
7. prospects ['prɔspekts] (n. plu.) *khả năng thành công, triển vọng*

8. offence [ə'fens] (n) *sự vi phạm, sự phạm tội*

9. ignorance ['ignərəns] (n) *thiếu kiến thức, ngu dốt*

10. provoke [prə'vəʊk] (v) *khiêu khích; chọc tức*

11. adequately ['ædikwitli] (adv) *tương xứng, thích đáng, thoả đáng*

12. associate [ə'səʊʃiit] (v) *kết giao, giao thiệp*

59. AN INTERESTING STORY I HAVE HEARD

Một câu chuyện lý thú tôi đã nghe

An interesting story that i have heard is about a deserted house in a remote village somewhere in India.

The house had not been occupied for several years after the death of its owner. For some reason no one liked or cared for the owner. Therefore, when he died, he was not buried. His dead body remained in his bed until it was reduced to its skeleton[1].

One evening a traveller was passing by this house when it suddenly began to rain heavily. Looking for shelter[2], he ran into this house, where, to his surprise and terror, he saw a human skeleton. But the rain had not stopped and it was rapidly growing dark. He has therefore no choice but to sit there, in the hope that somebody like him might come in to keep him company[3]. But no one came. It was now too dark to see anything outside. He therefore decided to spend the night in that dark and lonely house.

The rain continued to fall unabated[4]. The wind was strong and there was much lightning. The traveller lay on the floor but he could not sleep with the skeleton inside the house. After several hours, there was a sudden very cold crawling[5] over his body. he was now too frightened to move. After a while, he heard another strange cry. Just at that moment, a lightning flashed across the sky when he saw a large animal jump out of the house through a window which had been open. He now began to pray for his safety.

While he was in this position, some robbers[6] happened to take shelter in the verandah[7] of the house. They began to talk and laugh loudly. Hearing the voices, the traveller began to ask some questions from inside to make sure that there were some people outside. But the robbers were now frightened. They thought that it was the voice of ghost. They ran away as fast as they could.

When morning came, the traveller rushed out of the house and never returned to that part of the country.

NEW WORDS:

1. skeleton ['skelitn] (n) *bộ xương*
2. shelter ['ʃeltə] (n) *chỗ nương tựa, chỗ che chở, chỗ ẩn náu*
3. keep sb company *có ai bên mình làm bầu bạn*
4. unabated [,ʌnə'beitid] (adj) *không giảm sút, không yếu đi*
5. crawl [krɔ:l] (n) *làm sởn gai ốc*
6. robber ['rɔbə] (n) *kẻ cướp; kẻ trộm*
7. verandah [və'rændə] (n) *hiên, hè, hành lang*

60. MY MOST FAVOURITE SUBJECT

Môn học ưa thích nhất của tôi

My most favourite subject is English which is today one of the most important languages in the world. It is spoken and understood in all parts of the earth.

English has become an international language for a variety of reasons. One of the most important of them is that the English people have been well-known for their knowledge of science medicine, engineering, government and all other matters that are useful for the progress of the human race. It is because or the scientists of England that the motor-engine has become the most important machine in the world today.

In the same way, English scholar[1] have studied the past and discovered many things of great value to the peoples of the world. Some of the things which were useful to men in the early days were later forgotten by others. Such things are now again being used, owing to the work of English scholars.

The insatiable thirst[2] for knowledge of the English scholars has contributed to the progress of man in almost all fields of his activity. Thousands of books have been written by such scholars on almost every subject that one can think of. Thus, people whose native tongue[3] is not English have learnt English with great interest as a means of acquiring knowledge of all human affairs.

As a result or this interest English is used almost everywhere in the world. It is used in all the important meetings and conferences and debates[4] such as in the United Nations. It is also used in all the leading Universities in the world and in international trade and commerce[5]. As it is used so widely, English has indeed become a very rich language. People of all the countries of the world have contributed new ideas and thoughts to this language. Thus, more and more new words are being coined[6] to make this language more and more useful for the communication of ideas and information among the peoples of the world.

It is for all these reasons that I like to study the English language.

NEW WORDS:

1 scholar ['skɔlə] (n) *học giả*

2. insatiable thirst [in'seiʃəbl θə:st] *sự khát khao không thể thoả mãn*

3. native tongue ['neitiv tʌŋ] (n) *tiếng mẹ đẻ*

4. debate [di'beit] (n) *cuộc tranh luận, cuộc thảo luận, cuộc tranh cãi*

5. commerce ['kɔmə:s] (n) *thương mại; thương nghiệp*

6. coin [kɔin] (v) *tạo ra, đặt ra, sáng chế*

61. DESCRIBE AN UNPLEASANT DREAM THAT YOU HAVE HAD

Hãy mô tả lại một giấc mơ xấu mà bạn gặp

Everyone dreams. Some dreams are pleasant and some are not. One of the most unpleasant dreams that I have had concerns[1] a wild creature which used to visit a village every night in search of blood and flesh.

It is difficult for me to give a proper description[2] of the creature. It was tall, black and hairy. Its legs and hands resembled[3] those of a man, but its face was like that of a leopard[4]. It walked like a man but it could also run like an animal when it wished. Its home was not on land but in the sea.

However, its thirst for blood was insatiable. Every night when all the people in the village that it used to visit went to bed, it would come out of the sea and quietly go into the village. It would look for a man who might be outside. Such was its luck that it found at least one man every night. Its method of attack was simple. As soon as it saw a man, it would

put its powerful hands round his neck and strangle[5] him. At the same time it would sink its teeth into the flesh and drink his blood. This unfortunate man would have no time to shout, for death came swiftly[6].

In this way, the creature had killed a lot of people, but no one could explain their disappearance. As the foot prints of the creature were similar to those of a tall and big man, no one could distinguish[7] between the foot prints of the creature and those of a man.

Then, one night, I happened to be in the village. The creature, however, did not see me when it came. I was at first frightened, but when I saw it had caught and killed a man, I felt brave. I knew that it would now not bother[8] to kill me. I therefore decided to follow the creature.

Not suspecting that it was being followed, the creature stopped at a place and began to eat the man. When it was satisfied, it picked up the remains of the man and slowly walked back into the sea which was only a short distance from the village. All the while I moved very cautiously[9].

Then, I ran back to the village and told the people what had happened. On the next day, the villagers waited near the sea with all the weapons that they had. The creature came out for its usual meals, but this was an unfortunate day for the creature.

As soon as it was on the land, the villagers surrounded[10] it and killed it. Its cries of pain and anger before it died were such that I suddenly woke up to find that I was only dreaming. I felt greatly relieved.

NEW WORDS:

1. concern [kən'sə:n] (v) *liên quan đến, dính líu tới*
2. description [dis'kripʃn] (n) *sự diễn tả, sự mô tả, sự miêu tả*
3. resemble [ri'zembl] (v) *giống với, tương tự*
4. leopard ['lepəd] (n) *con báo*
5. strangle ['stræŋgl] (v) *siết cổ chết; bóp nghẹt*
6. swiftly ['swiftli] (adv) *nhanh; nhanh chóng; ngay lập tức*
7. distinguish [dis'tiŋgwiʃ] (v) *phân biệt*
8. bother ['bɔđə] (v) *áy náy, băn khoăn lo ngại*
9. cautiously ['kɔ:ʃəsli] (adv) *cẩn thận, thận trọng*
10. surround [sə'raʊnd] (v) *vây quanh, bao quanh*

62. GIVE AN ACCOUNT OF HOW YOU SPENT YOUR LAST HOLIDAY

Hãy kể lại bạn đã trải qua kỳ nghỉ vừa rồi thế nào

During my last school holidays, I spent a few days at my cousin's house at Morib, a well-known sea resort[1]. I shall never forget that visit.

On the day I arrived at Morib, my cousin told me that he would do to make my stay there a very interesting one. He said that he would first make a raft[2] to use it in the sea. Then he would buy fishing net to catch some fish in the shallow waters near the coast. When I heard all this, I was very delighted[3] because it was for these reasons that I had decided to visit my cousin. We then walked up to the beach which is near his house.

While we were there, sometime in the evening, the sea looked extremely[4] beautiful. I saw the islands and hills in the distance, the birds in the air, and a few boys and girls playing on the beach. I also saw some fishermen coming out of the water with their catch. All this was indeed[5] very interesting to look at.

On the next day, my cousin and I collected[6] some tree trunks from the forest nearby. As my cousin's house is close to the sea, we decided to make the raft on the beach itself. It took us almost the whole morning to make the raft. We then had our lunch and went to Banting, the nearest town, to buy fishing net. After that we returned to my cousin's house.

In the evening we put the raft on the sea. The water was still high, but the raft floated quite well. My cousin and I sat on it and began to row[7] it by using the oars[8] that we had made ourselves. We felt very happy indeed and continued to row it. We remained[9] on it for a long time, but as it was already getting dark[10] we did not go far. We returned to the shore and tied[11] the raft to a tree.

On the next day, we went out to catch some crabs[12] and fish. We used the net that we had bought and caught a lot of fish. Then, we had our lunch and went out again on the raft. We continued to row it as far as we could. It was really a pleasure to be away from the shore. The sea was calm and we could row with ease[13]. My cousin told me many interesting things about Morib. We then returned to the shore.

In this way, I spent my holidays happily at Morib, a place I shall never forget.

NEW WORDS:

1. sea resort [si: ri:'zɔ:t] (n) *nơi nghỉ mát ở bờ biển*
2. raft [rɑ:ft] (n) *cái bè, cái mảng*
3. delighted [di'laitid] (adj) *vui mừng, hài lòng*
4. extremely [iks'tri:mli] (adv) *vô cùng, cực độ, cực kỳ*
5. *indeed [in'di:d] (adv) quả thực*
6. trunk [trʌŋk] (n) *thân cây*
7. row [rou] (v) *chèo thuyền*
8. oar [ɔ:(r)] (n) *mái chèo*
9. remain [ri'mein] (v) *ở lại*
10. to get dark *(trời) tối dần*
11. tie [tai] (v) *buộc, cột, trói*
12. crab [kræb] (n) *con cua*
13. ease [i:z] (n) *sự dễ dàng*

63. WHY SHOULD WE HAVE GOOD MANNERS?

Tại sao chúng ta nên có nhân cách tốt?

Good manners are important to live happily among people. Without good manners we are only slightly[1] better than animals.

The modem society consists of more people than it did in the past. These people are of various cultural, racial, religious[2] and professional backgrounds[3]. To live among such people therefore requires great powers of endurance and abilities of mixing with people. Good manners enable one to tolerate[4] the disagreeable[5] attitudes of others to a great extent. They also help to promote friendship among the people around.

If one has good manners one is respected by those who associate[6] with one. Having good manners, however, does not mean that one should be polite, understanding, and sympathetic only when one is outside one's home but also inside one's home. There are many people who are very kind and polite to people outside their homes, but within their own homes they are worse than the devil himself. Such people do not really have good manners.

Having good manners means that we should always be good to others. Our speech and habits as well as our behaviour should not hurt the

feelings of others or cause them any inconvenience[7]. We should also not talk ill about others or boast[8] about our achievements or personal possessions. We must not laugh at the weaknesses and failures[9] of others. Further, if we are angry we must try to use words in such a way that others are not offended[10].

If we have all these qualities, we will have more friends and well-wishers. We will also have less trouble from others, and those who associate with us will also learn how to behave well. In this way, our good manners will help to spread better understanding and good-will among others. Thus, we can live a happier life. It is for all these reasons that we should have good manners.

NEW WORDS:

1. slightly ['slaitli] (adv) *nhỏ; ở một mức độ không đáng kể*
2. racial ['reiʃl] (adj) *đặc trưng cho chủng tộc*
3. background ['bækgraʊnd] (n) *bối cảnh*
4. tolerate ['tɔləreit] (v) *tha thứ, khoan dung*
5. disagreeable [,disə'gri:əbl] (adj) *không thú vị, không vừa ý*
6. associate [ə'səʊʃiit] (v) *kết giao, cộng tác*
7. inconvenience [,inkən'vi:njəns] (n) *sự bất tiện, sự phiền phức*
8. boast [bəʊst] (v) *khoe khoang, tự kiêu*
9. failure ['feiljə] (n) *sự thất bại*
10. offend [ə'fend] (v) *xúc phạm; làm bực mình; làm khó chịu*
11. good-will [gud'wil] (n) *thiện ý, thiện chí; lòng tốt*

64. JOURNALISM AS A CAREER

Ngành báo chí cũng là một nghề nghiệp

Almost everyone who can read and write sometimes feels the urge to write on some favourite topic. But some people love writing so much that they spend much of their time in writing something on various subjects for the sheer pleasure of writing. Such people usually become skillful writers; and if the ability to write with ease and facility[1] was enough to achieve[2] success in the field of journalism[3], many people would make journalism their career.

In countries like England and Japan, where there are hundreds of newspapers and journals, journalism is an attractive profession. It is a very good source or income to many. But in Malaysia there are so few newspapers and journals that journalism offers almost no prospect of success. Even in England and Japan, however, many people have failed to achieve any success in this field. To be successful in journalism, one must have many other qualities, besides the ability to write effectively. One of the most important qualities is the ability to judge[4] what the average reader likes or dislikes. If one writes for a political journal, one should have a fair knowledge of what the readers of that journal expect from it. If one writes for a women's journal, one should know almost instinctively[5] what its readers prefer. Accordingly, the journalist should gather information from all possible sources for his articles and stories for publication. He may even have to distort[6] or omit certain facts and information, which in his judgement may appear unpleasant to his readers. Further, if certain unpleasant facts have to be revealed to his readers, he has to employ words with such skill that his readers will take almost no offence. All these require great intellectual qualities.

Besides, to collect information, the journalist has to travel extensively and meet many people, far and near. As too much travelling involve great physical activity, the journalist has to pay sufficient[7] attention to his health to keep himself strong. He has also to cultivate pleasing habits to meet all sorts of people. He must also he prepared to work under very unpleasant circumstances[8]. For example, if he is working for a popular newspaper, he may have to be at the scene or a battle and risk his life to send his report to his newspaper office. All this involves great personal sacrifice.

Finally, a good journalist should have a good grasp of the constitutional[9] rights of the citizens of his country and the policies of his government. He should also know the laws of libel[10] and slander[11]. Ignorance of any or these may lead him to make unfair criticisms and disclosures[12] which may cause serious troubles in the country. Thus, success in journalism is not easy to attain, and only a few people make it their career.

NEW WORDS:

1. facility [fə'siliti] (n) *khả năng học hoặc làm việc một cách dễ dàng*
2. achieve [ə'tʃi:v] (v) *đạt được, giành được*

3. journalism ['dʒə:nəlizm] (n) *nghề làm báo, nghề viết báo*
4. judge ['dʒʌdʒ] (v) *xét, xét đoán, phán đoán, đánh giá*
5. instinctively [in'stiŋktivli] (adv) *theo bản năng, do bản năng*
6. distort [dis'tɔ:t] (n) *làm méo mó; bóp méo, xuyên tạc*
7. sufficient [sə'fiʃnt] (adj) *đầy đủ*
8. circumstance ['sə:kəmstəns] (n) *hoàn cảnh, trường hợp, tình huống*
9. constitutional [,kɔnsti'tju:ʃənl] (adj) *(thuộc) hiến pháp, theo hiến pháp, đúng với hiến pháp*
10. libel ['laibəl] (n) *lời phỉ báng; tội phỉ báng*
11. slander ['slɑ:ndə] (n) *sự vu khống, sự vu cáo*
12. disclosure [dis'kləʊʒə] (n) *sự vạch trần, sự phơi bày*

65. BEAUTY IN NATURE

Cái đẹp trong thiên nhiên

Beauty is hard to define but easy to recognise. In nature beauty may be discerned[1] in all things and places, even in the most unexpected regions of the earth.

There is beauty in the infinite variety of flowers, birds, animals and plants, many of which are vividly colourful. There is beauty in mountains, valleys and hills, and in the skies. Thus, beauty can be found in all the creations of God[2]. Then hunter who scans[3] the forests for his quarry[4] is often fascinated by the beauty that he finds in objects, which conceal[5] beautiful flowers from human sight, suddenly reveal[6] theil secrets to him when he stumbles[7] over them. The fisherman who turns to the sea for his livelihood is fascinated by the beauty of the multitudinous[8] creatures that swarm in the seas. Many of these creatures are found even on the shore. But the oceans often conceal the beauty that lies below their surface, and to catch a glimpse[9] of the beauty of the world below the sea, hundreds of divers everywhere explore the bottoms of the oceans, even at the risk of losing their lives in the unknown regions of the world below.

Even the farmer and the traveller appreciate the beauty that is found in nature. The farmer finds beauty in the variety of the plants that he grows. The traveller is impressed with the beauty of distant hills and mountains, and the beauty of meadering[10] rivers in large valleys. He is also

appreciative of the beauty of the night. As he travel in the moon-light, he looks at the landscape and is lost in admiration of it.

The beauty in nature is also appreciated by others. Almost every one delights to see the rushing streams and the numerous birds and animals that may be found in every part of the earth, for these are part of the ornaments[11] of nature. Even the tiniest of creatures has a beauty of its own. In search of this beauty in nature, men in all parts of the world are travelling great distances and spending a great deal of money, even in some cases, even their life savings. It is this appreciation of natural beauty that impels[12] men to visit distant lands which have a beauty of their own. Men have also visited the islands that are spread throughout the world in search of the natural beauty. Many have seen visited the cold deserts in the Artics as well as the hot deserts where few plants grow, in search of the beauty that may be found in these regions, despite the lack of vegetation and animals life. The deserts are indeed the home of many beautiful plants and animals which find sufficient refuge[13] in these parts, and many of the birds too, here are remarkable[14] for their beauty.

But the person who is most appreciative of natural beauty is the poet who finds music and beauty even in the movement of the clouds and winds. His deep appreciation of the beauty that he finds around him impels him to give utterance[15] to it in the most expressive language, which is itself often of imperishable[16] beauty.

NEW WORDS:

1. discern [di'sə:n] (v) *nhận thức, thấy rõ*
2. God [gɔd] (n) *Chúa Trời, Thượng Đế*
3. scan [skæn] (v) *xem tỉ mỉ; kiểm tra cẩn thận*
4. quarry ['kwɔri] (n) *con mồi*
5. conceal [kən'si:l] (v) *giấu giếm, giấu, che đậy*
6. reveal [ri'vi:l] (v) *bộc lộ, biểu lộ; tiết lộ*
7. stumble ['stʌmbl] (v) *vấp, trượt chân*
8. multitudinous [,mʌlti'tju:dinəs] (adj) *rất nhiều, vô số, đông vô kể*
9. glimpse [glimps] (n) *cái nhìn lướt qua, cái nhìn thoáng qua*
10. meander [mi'ændə] (v) *ngoằn ngoèo, quanh co, khúc khuỷu*
11. ornament ['ɔ:nəment] (n) *đồ trang hoàng, đồ trang trí*
12. impel [im'pel] (v) *thúc ép, bắt buộc*

13. refuge ['refju:dʒ] (n) *nơi trốn tránh; nơi ẩn náu; nơi trú ẩn*

14. remarkable [ri'mɑ:kəbl] (adj) *đáng chú ý, đáng để ý*

15. utterance ['ʌtərəns] (n) *sự phát biểu, sự bày tỏ*

16. imperishable [im'periʃəbl] (adj) *bất hủ, bất tử, bất diệt*

66. "IT IS ESSENTIAL TO PROGRESS THAT EACH GENERATION SHALL REBEL AGAINST THE IDEAS OF THE GENERATION BEFORE IT". Discuss

Điều mấu chốt đối với sự phát triển là mỗi thế hệ sẽ nổi lên chống lại những ý kiến của thế hệ trước đó

Progress is the germination[1] of ideas. Almost every thing that people use today for their convenience originated from ideas conceived[2] by some men in the past. It is the nature or men, however, to accept the social conventions[3] of their times. The fear of ridicule[4] restrains[5] them from defying the existing customs and practices or from expressing their own ideas and beliefs on certain things. Yet, there have always appeared a few individuals in every generation who have expressed thoughts which were not entertained[6] by the generality or the people. It is such men who act up to their convictions that are often responsible for progress in the world.

It has been realised that until some men have the moral strength to oppose[7] the views of a generation, no progress occurs in the political or social life of that generation. For example, when the idea of a locomotive[8] was conceived by George Stevenson, many ridiculed it as fantastic; but as soon as the idea was put into concrete[9] shape; people realised the benefits that they could derive from the use of this invention, which revolutionised transport and affected the lives of the people tremendously[10]. It helped to increase mobility, and soon much progress occurred in all sphere ᶜ social life in England. Even those who were working hard to discover the causes and cure of diseases in the past were often described as eccentric[11]; but there was sufficient faith and preseverence[12] among these men to impel them to carry on with their work until success crowned their efforts.

Similarly, many generations in England and France considered it almost sacrilegious[13] to oppose the Monarchy[14] in any form. As a result, there was practically no constitutional progress, and many of the citizens in these countries suffered political injustice. Then, however, a

generation began to have different ideas about the Monarchy, and soon strong opposition to the prevailing[15] system of government was expressed, which caused tremendous changes in the political life on the people in these two countries, though not at the same time. In France, the Monarchy was abolished in the end, and in England royal absolutism[16] yielded to constitutional monarchy. People now began to enjoy more political freedom, with the result that there was much progress in all aspects of national life.

Sometimes, however, it becomes disastrous[17] for a generation to rebel against the ideas of the previous generation. In Germany and Japan, for example, there were several generations which viewed wars with abhorrence[18]. Then a generation arose which could not hold the same ideas of peace. This generation began to speak of the glory of war, and the people of these countries began to concentrate on the production of war materials. The aggressive designs of these two countries caused other countries also to prepare for war. Thus, conflicts soon broke out, which developed into world wars, and millions of people of all races perished[19] in the conflagration[20]. Instead of progress there was destruction and sorrow.

It is therefore hard to say with conviction that a rebellion of a generation against the ideas of the previous generation would inevitably[21] lead to progress. Only the purpose of the rebellion could indicate whether there will be any progress.

NEW WORDS:

1. germination [,dʒə:mi'neiʃn] (n) *sự nảy mầm, sự mọc mộng*
2. conceive [kən'si:v] (v) *hình dung, quan niệm*
3. convention [kən'venʃn] (n) *tục lệ, lệ thường; quy ước*
4. ridicule ['ridikju:l] (n) *sự nhạo báng, sự chế nhạo, sự giễu cợt*
5. restrain [ri'strein] (v) *ngăn trở; cản trở; kiềm chế*
6. entertain [,entə'tein] (v) *sẵn sàng và vui lòng xem xét*
7. oppose [ə'pəʊz] (v) *chống đối, phản đối*
8. locomotive ['ləʊkəməʊtiv] (n) *đầu máy (xe lửa)*
9. concrete ['kɔŋkri:t] (adj) *cụ thể*
10. tremendously [tri'mendəsli] (adv) *ghê gớm, to lớn*
11. eccentric [ik'sentrik] (n) *người lập dị, người kỳ cục*

12. preseverence [,pə:si'viəriŋ] (adj) *kiên nhẫn, kiên trì; bền gan*

13. sacrilegious [,sækri'lidʒəs] (adj) *phạm thượng; báng bổ thần thánh*

14. monarchy ['mɔnəki] (n) *nền quân chủ; chế độ quân chủ*

15. prevailing [pri'veiliŋ] (adj) *đang thịnh hành, phổ biến khắp, rất thông dụng*

16. absolutism ['æbsəlu:tizm] (n) *chính thể chuyên chế*

17. disastrous [di'zɑ:strəs] (adj) *tai hại, thảm khốc; bất hạnh*

18. abhorrence [əb'hɔrəns] (n) *sự ghê tởm*

19. perish ['periʃ] (v) *diệt vong; chết; bỏ mạng, bỏ mình*

20. conflagration [,kɔnflə'greiʃn] (n) *đám cháy lớn; tai hoạ lớn, sự xung đột lớn*

21. inevitably [in'evitəbli] (adv) *chắc hẳn, chắc chắn*

67. Do you agree that the study of Mathematics is essential to the progress or the human race?

Bạn có đồng ý rằng việc nghiên cứu Toán học là thiết yếu đối với sự phát triển của loài người?

Though the study of Mathematics had occupied the attention of Egyptian and Greek scholars centuries ago, yet it was only after the advent of the Industrial Revolution that the importance of the subject was fully realised by scholars and educationists everywhere. Today, Mathematics is one of the most important subjects in all the schools and universities of the world.

Before the Industrial Revolution, men lived very simple lives. Agriculture, hunting and fishing were then their main sources of livelihood. It did not occur to them that their lives could be made more comfortable if they only exercised their mental faculties[1] a little more and organised a system of knowledge, which we now call the Science, and applied it to practical purposes. Thus, they turned to nature for sustenance[2], and were satisfied with what they could acquire from nature with their skills. This simple mode of existence was, however, disturbed by the inventions of a few men, sometime in the eighteenth century, which caused people everywhere to think of new ways of improving their conditions of living. The inventions revealed new sources of comfort, and power for the production of goods. Thus, the Industrial Revolution began. More and more machines were invented for the rapid

production of goods, and the study of Mathematics began to receive great encouragement[3], for it was realised that machines function on mathematical principles.

The intensive[4] study of Mathematics revealed its potentialities[5]. It was soon applied not only to invent new machinery but also to explain abstruse[6] subjects such as Physics, Logic and many others. In fact, Mathematics is now used to teach and explain almost every important subject in schools and universities. Even the construction of buildings and bridges requires a deep knowledge of Mathematics.

The study of Mathematics has also helped to increase the mental powers of men. They are not only able to think more clearly than they could before but are also able to understand and explain many of the things which they could not understand earlier.

Sometimes, however, Mathematical principles have been applied for tragic consequences[7]. In battles and wars, bombs and cannon-balls[8] have been released with remarkable accuracy to destroy the enemy. This fact reveals how knowledge of Mathematics could be used to hinder human progress. But such a situation develops only when men have lost their patience and their capacity for compromise and fortunately the leaders of the world today are trying their utmost to remove the causes for war.

In general, however, men have a natural impulse[9] to live in peace and harmony with others, and almost every invention is aimed at promoting the welfare[10] of the peoples of the world. Thus, the human race has benefited from the efforts of those who have made the fullest use of Mathematical principles for all their inventions. I therefore agree that the study of Mathematics is essential to the progress of the human race.

NEW WORDS:

1 the mental faculties ['mentl 'fækəltiz] *năng lực trí tuệ*

2. sustenance ['sʌstinəns] (n) *chất bổ, sự bổ dưỡng*

3. encouragement [in'kʌridʒmənt] (n) *niềm khích lệ; niềm cổ vũ; niềm động viên*

4. intensive [in'tensiv] (adj) *tập trung, chuyên sâu; cao độ, mạnh mẽ, sâu sắc*

5. potentiality [pə,tenʃi'æləti] (n) *tiềm năng, tiềm lực*

6. abstruse [əb'stru:s] (adj) *khó hiểu; thâm thuý, sâu sắc*

7. consequence ['kɔnsikwəns] (n) *hậu quả, kết quả*

8. cannon-ball ['kænənbɔ:l] (n) *đạn trái phá*
9. impulse ['impʌls] (n) *sự thúc đẩy, thôi thúc*
10. welfare ['welfeə] (n) *hạnh phúc, sự thịnh vượng*

68. What contributions can writers make to the promotion of good will among the people of a country?

Những đóng góp nào các nhà văn có thể làm được để thúc đẩy thiện chí giữa mọi người ở một đất nước?

Since remote antiquity[1] writers in every country have exerted a profound influence on the minds of the people. The writings or political philosophers, like Rousseau and Voltaire, have even caused revolutions and diverted[2] the course of history. Such is the power of writers who express their ideas and views with lucidity[3] and cogency[4].

Most writers who dwell upon[5] the affairs of their countries are deeply conscious[6] of their responsibility towards their countries and compatriots[7]. This consciousness not only impels them to avoid issues which tend to divide the people but also to express their views on delicate[8] issues in the most temperate language. Their main aim is to promote goodwill among the people of the country, and this they try to achieve in various ways.

In a country dominated[9] by people of the same race and language, writers can promote goodwill among its people by clarifying[10] political and economic issues which the people understand only vaguely[11]. If the people are divided by ideological[12] differences or by differences of economic status, writers can exercise their influence to remove the resentment and prejudices[13] among the people. Even those who write on social problems can emphasise the issues that tend to unite the people. They can also suggest ways and means of removing the causes of resentment and frustration[14] that exist among the people. As the written word is more effective than the spoken word, people tend to accept the views of writers more readily than those expressed verbally[15] by various people.

But it is in countries in which people of various races reside that writers can make the greatest contribution to the promotion of goodwill among the people. In a country like Malaya, for example, writers can concentrate on the issues that tend to unite the people. They should not be too critical of the attitudes of one race to gratify the emotions of

another race. If they do so, they will incite racial discord and even violence which may affect the whole country adversely[16]. If short speeches to a small group of people can cause riots and racial conflicts in all parts of the country, writers can do greater harm, for the written word circulates[17] more extensively for a longer period.

This power of the written word, however, could be used by writers for the benefit of the whole nation. By giving prominence to the social aspects of life that affect the people as human beings and as individuals of a particular race, writers can help in the development of a common outlook among the people. They could also help in making the people realise the benefits in peace and harmony. A study of the history of many countries reveals how the ways and habits of its people are influeneed by the pen of distinguished writers. Even the leaders of the country are often guided by the opinions of noted writers.

Indeed, in times of great discontent[18] in a country, writers advise the people to exercise patience and moderation in expressing their grievance[19]. There are many examples of how writers in various countries have been able to remove feelings of hatred among the people. The newspaper, for example, which is the product of the combined effort of many writers, is able to exert a restraining influence on people who are easily provoked. This is the best example of what writers could do to promote goodwill among the people of a country.

NEW WORDS:

1 antiquity [æn'tikwiti] (n) *thời xưa*

2. divert [dai'və:t] (v) *làm đổi hướng*

3. lucidity [lu:'siditi] (n) *sự rõ ràng, minh bạch*

4. cogency ['kəʊdʒənsi] (v) *sự vững chắc; sức thuyết phục*

5. dwell upon [dwel ə'pɔn] (v) *chuyên chú vào*

6. conscious ['kɔnʃəs] (adj) *có ý thức; biết rõ*

7. compatriot [kəm'pætriət] (n) *đồng bào*

8. delicate ['delikət] (adj) *tinh vi, tinh tế, tế nhị*

9. dominate ['dɔmineit] (v) *chiếm ưu thế; chi phối; thống trị*

10. clarify ['klærifai] (v) *làm cho sáng sủa dễ hiểu*

11 vaguely ['veigli] (adv) *mơ hồ, ngờ ngợ*

12. ideological [,aidiə'lɔdʒikəl] (adj) *thuộc hệ tư tưởng*

13. prejudice ['predʒudis] (n) *sự thành kiến, định kiến, thiên kiến*
14. frustration [frʌs'treiʃn] (n) *tâm trạng thất vọng, vỡ mộng*
15. verbally ['və:bəli] (adv) *bằng lời nói*
16. adversely ['ædvə:sli] (adv) *bất lợi*
17. circulate ['sə:kjuleit] (v) *lưu truyền, truyền bá*
18. discontent [,diskən'tent] (n) *sự bất mãn, sự bất bình*
19. grievance ['gri:vəns] (n) *lời phàn nàn, lời kêu ca; lời than phiền; mối bất bình*

69. Which period in the history of your country do you find most inspiring[1]? Discuss the features in that period which appeal to you most

Thời kỳ nào trong lịch sử của đất nước bạn gây cho bạn ấn tượng mạnh mẽ nhất? Hãy thảo luận những nét đặc biệt trong thời kỳ đó lôi cuốn bạn nhất

Malaysia, my country, has a very short history compared with that of most of the other countries of South-east Asia. The historical events that occurred here before the fifteenth century are still obscure. Yet many interesting developments have taken place in the last few centuries. New sultanates[2] were established by fugitive[3] rulers; parts of the country were occupied by Europeans of different nationalities who fought among themselves for supremacy[4], until the whole country came under British control; native powers in Indonesia clashed with one another for domination of this little country; the Japanese occupied it for a brief period, and there were internal conflicts caused either by nationalists who were opposed to foreign control or by elements who aimed to establish a system of government which the people opposed. Thus, there are many periods in the short history of Malaysia which are inspiring. But, to me, the most inspiring period is that when Malaya was under the rule of Japan.

The Japanese occupation of my country was characterized[5] by many features. Those that appeal to me most are the complete absence of Japanese control in several parts of the country, which, according to what I have read, enabled the nationalists, who operated from the dense equatorial forest of the country, to strengthen their hold on most of those areas; the leverish[6] activity of the India Independence Army under their

great leader, Subash Chandra Bose, in preparation for the invasion of India, and the growth of the country against Japanese imperialism[7].

Japan was not able to consolidate[8] her position after her conquest9 of South-east Asia during the Second World War. The allied forces began their counter-offensive, and Japan had to withdraw her troops from several parts of Malaya to meet the threat from the allied forces. This had the result of leaving many parts of the country out of Japanese control. In these areas, therefore, the anti-Japanese elements of all races were very active. They emerged from the jungle and tried to exploit the subdued discontent of the people against Japanese rule, which was marked by brutality[10] and extreme poverty and hardship. They also organised resistance groups. Even the members of the police force, who owed nominal loyalty[11] to the Japanese government, co-operated with the discontented elements. These efforts of the anti-Japanese elements contributed substantially[12] to the growth of a new spirit which inspired the people to oppose Japanese tyranny[13] and free themselves from foreign rule.

The Indian Independence Army, on the other hand, had other ambitions. Though mistrusful[14] of Japanese intentions, it relied on Japanese support for the realisation of its aim to expel the British from India. With this aim in view, it tried to attract as many Indians as possible for military service. Even the Indian youths were taught to think only of the freedom of their mother land, and everywhere songs were sung and slogans[15] shouted by Indians to express their patriotism. Thus, sentiments were expressed by the people against two imperialist powers, Britain and Japan, who were themselves rivals. These sentiments indicated the people's aspiration[16] for freedom.

All these events have indeed contributed to the development of a new attitude among the people towards colonial[17] rule, and the political freedom that we enjoy today is a direct consequence of these developments. It is for all these reasons that I find this period in the history of my country most inspiring.

NEW WORDS:

1 inspiring [in'spaiəriŋ] (adj) *truyền cảm hứng, truyền cảm*

2. sultanate ['sʌltəneit] (n) *lãnh thổ của vua, vương quốc Hồi giáo; ngôi vua (các nước Hồi giáo)*

3. fugitive ['fju:dʒitiv] (adj) *ngắn ngủi, thoáng qua*
4. supremacy [su:'preməsi] (n) *uy quyền tối cao; uy thế*
5. characterize ['kæriktəraiz] (v) *tiêu biểu cho; là đặc điểm của*
6. feverish ['fi:vəriʃ] (adj) *sôi nổi, háo hức*
7. imperialism [im'piəriəlizm] (n) *chủ nghĩa đế quốc; đế quốc*
8. consolidate [kən'sɔlideit] (v) *củng cố*
9. conquest ['kɔŋkwest] (n) *sự xâm chiếm, sự chinh phục*
10. brutality [bru:'tæliti] (n) *tính hung ác, tính tàn bạo*
11. loyalty ['lɔiəlti] (n) *lòng trung thành, lòng trung nghĩa, trung kiên*
12. substantially [səb'stænʃəli] (adv) *về thực chất, về căn bản*
13. tyranny ['tirəni] *sự bạo ngược, sự chuyên chế*
14. mistrustful ['mis'trʌstful] (adj) *không tin, nghi ngờ, ngờ vực*
15. slogan ['sləʊgən] (n) *khẩu hiệu*
16. aspiration [,æspə'reiʃn] (n) *nguyện vọng, khát vọng*
17. colonial [kə'ləʊnjəl] (adj) *thuộc địa; thực dân*

70. Which language do you think has made the greatest contribution to the promotion of better understanding among the people of the world?

Ngôn ngữ nào mà bạn nghĩ rằng đã góp phần lớn nhất trong việc phát triển sự hiểu biết lẫn nhau giữa loài người trên thế giới?

The human race is divided by a multiplicity[1] of languages, many of which have come to play an important part in the affairs of the world.

A little reflection reveals that the importance of a language is associated mainly with the ideas and knowledge it contains. The more ideas a language can convey to the peoples of the world, the more it will be used by people everywhere. Thus, the language that is used most extensively is the language that makes the greatest contribution to human progress and mutual[2] understanding between peoples.

It cannot be denied that today the most widely used language is the English language. There are few countries in which this language is not understood or used. Even the countries which preached[3] hatred for everything English, including the English language, during their struggle for independence from British rule such as India, found it difficult to

dispense with this language after they became independent. Therefore, they not only continued to use English in all spheres of public activity but also began to encourage the use and study of the English language as means of achieving national progress and unity. These efforts on the part of the various countries of the world convey an idea of the importance of the English language.

It would be instructive, however, to consider the reason for the extensive use of the English language. One of the reasons is that several countries in the world have been occupied mainly by immigrants[4] from England such as the United States of America, Australia and New Zealand. It is therefore not surprising that the people of such countries have continued to use the English language, though they have severed their political connexions[5] with their mother country and acquired independent status, for one cannot discard[6] one's language easily. Another reason is that, in the course or history, a large number of countries throughout the world came directly under British rule, where English was made the main language for administrative[7], commercial[8] and all other purposes.

As the leading colonial power in the world, England has indeed exerted a profound influence on the affairs of the world, though her colonial possessions are rapidly becoming independent one after the other. Concomitantly[9], the English language too has come to play a leading role in international communication. Thus, many people whose native language is not English have studied English and become more conversant with English than with their own languages. This is especially true with the leaders of the people to whom English is a foreign language. As a result, the English language is used by them not only in the administration of their countries but also in all their institutions of higher learning.

The most important reason for the pre-eminence[10] of the English language, however, is that it is the source of all knowledge. The Industrial Revolution that began in England and spread to other countries revealed the English genius for invention. Even the political and social institutions of England, which were affected tremendously by the Industrial Revolution, have evoked[11] the admiration of all countries. The knowledge, ideas, experiences and profound thoughts of the English people have made a deep impression on the minds of the people of other countries. Innumerable[12] books have been written in the English

language on all branches of study, and such is the thirst of English scholars for knowledge and their desire to communicate it, that they have even translated books of great value from other language to English for the benefit of all. Writers of other nationalities too have written a great number of books in English and made a substantial[13] contribution to the enrichment of the English language. As a result of all these efforts, the English language has become the main avenue to the greatest storehouse or information. Therefore, people everywhere have developed a special respect for the language and they continue to learn it with avidity[14].

As the English language is used so extensively it is mainly in this language that the peoples of the world communicate with and understand one another. No other language has such a wide appeal[15] or popularity. I am therefore of the opinion that it is the English language that has made the greatest contribution to the promotion of the better understanding among the peoples of the world.

NEW WORDS:

1. multiplicity [,mʌlti'plisiti] (n) *vô số*
2. mutual ['mju:tjuəl] (adj) *qua lại, hỗ tương*
3. preach [pri:tʃ] (v) *chủ trương; thuyết giáo*
4. immigrant ['imigrənt] (n) *người nhập cư*
5. connexion [kə'nekʃn] (n) *sự liên quan, mối quan hệ*
6. discard [di,skɑ:d] (v) *vứt bỏ, thải hồi*
7. administrative [əd'ministrətiv] (adj) *(thuộc) hành chính*
8. commercial [kə'mə:ʃl](adj) *(thuộc) thương mại*
9. concomitantly [kən'kɔmitəntli] (adv) *đi đôi với; đồng thời*
10. pre-eminence [pri: 'eminəns] (n) *sự ưu việt, hơn hẳn*
11. evoke [i'vəʊk] (v) *gợi lên*
12. innumerable [i'nju:mərəbl] (adj) *vô* số
13. substantial [səb'stænʃəl] (adj) *lớn lao; đáng kể; quan trọng*
14. avidity [ə'viditi] (n) *sự khát khao*
15. appeal [ə'pi:l] (n) *sự hấp dẫn*

71. Liberty

Sự tự do

Since his appearance on the earth, man has instinctively longed for liberty[1], an ideal which has inspired revolts[2] and revolutions throughout the long history of the human race.

The yearning for liberty or freedom is not restricted to man alone. Even animals, birds and all living creatures love the freedom that God has given to them. Like men, these creatures will never submit[3] to captivity without resistance. Neither will they cease to make tenacious[4] efforts to escape, once they are captured.

In the early days of their existence, men were free to pursue their own affairs, within the limits of their own ability. They moved from place to place in small isolated[5] groups and families, in search of food, which consisted of edible plants, fruits and the flesh of animals. The pursuit of the means of survival was their only occupation, and the things that restricted their freedom of movement, to some extent, were their own fears of the unknown and natural barriers such as mountains, dense forests, and rivers. These were no restraints[6] imposed upon them by human institutions, and they enjoyed their liberty.

Gradually, men learned to live in communities and various institutions were established, which soon curtailed[7] their liberty to a great extent. Rules were made for the cohesion[8] of each community and obedience to those rules was secured by the threat of punishment. This element of compulsion[9] imposed upon the conduct of the individuals in the community restricted the liberty of the people; but the greater security that men enjoyed in community life provided the incentive to partial sacrifices.

Soon, however, conflicts developed among the various communities. The stronger one conquered[10] the weaker one and in the contest for power and domination, hundreds of people lost their liberty completely. The enslavement[11] and suppression[12] of one group of people by another provided the stimulus[13] for numerous revolts and revolutions for liberty which have not ceased till this day. Even in the same community, sometimes, there were divisions. The rulers, who came to be known as kings, with the development of the communities into countries, were at variance with their subjects. To maintain their status[14] and to assert[15] their authority, kings developed their own theories of kingship, and many of them ruled in the most despotic[16] manner. Defiance[17] of the king's

authority was punished by death and imprisonment. What <u>constituted</u>[18] defiance was decided <u>arbitrarily</u>[19] by the king or his ministers, and thousands or people were deprived of their liberty.

Eventually, however, despotism <u>aroused</u>[20] the fury of political thinkers and writers in many countries. A <u>crusade</u>[21] then began against oppression and despotism, and the cry for liberty was heard everywhere. Revolutions erupted; despotic rulers were overthrown, and new rulers were compelled to rule with the consent of the people. The French Revolution of the eighteenth century is the best example of the extremity to which people were prepared to go to retain or regain their liberty, which is <u>claimed</u>[22] to be the birth-right of every man.

But liberty does not mean licence. In other words, men's liberty of action should not be <u>excessive</u>[23]. The French Revolution is, unfortunately, also the best example of how men may lose their sense of proportion and justice, in their attempts to assert their liberty. In that revolution hundreds of innocent men, women, and children lost their lives at the hands of those who took full advantage of the <u>anarchy</u>[24] that then <u>prevailed</u>[25] in France, to assert their liberty of action. Such actions are indeed licentious[26].

Thus, it may be argued that liberty will remain the battle-cry of all the <u>oppressed</u>[27] people, but those who have it should not use it to hurt or offend others or to deprive others of their liberty.

NEW WORDS:

1. liberty ['libəti] (n) *sự tự do; quyền tự do*
2. revolt [ri'vəʊlt] (n) *cuộc nổi dậy, cuộc khởi nghĩa; cuộc nổi loạn*
3. submit [səb'mit] (v) *chịu phục tùng, quy phục; ngừng phản kháng*
4. tenacious [ti'neiʃəs] (adj) *kiên trì, ngoan cường; ngoan cố*
5. isolaled ['aisəleitid] (adj) *biệt lập; cô đơn*
6. restraint [ri'streint] (n) *sự kiềm chế; sự gò bó, sự ràng buộc*
7. curtail [kə:'teil] (v) *tước đi, lấy đi*
8. cohesion [kəʊ'hi:ʒn] (n) *sự dính liền, sự cố kết*
9. compulsion [kəm'pʌlʃn] (n) *sự ép buộc, sự cưỡng bách*
10. conquer ['kɔŋkə] (v) *chinh phục, chế ngự*
11. enslavement [in'sleivmənt] (n) *sự nô dịch hoá, tình trạng bị nô dịch*

13. stimulus ['stimjuləs] (n) *sự kích thích; tác nhân kích khích*
14. status ['steitəs] (n) *địa vị, thân phận, thân thế*
15. assert [ə'sə:t] (v) *xác nhận, khẳng định*
16. despotic [des'pɔtik] (adj) *chuyên chế, chuyên quyền; bạo ngược*
17. defiance [di'faiəns] (n) *sự công khai kháng cự hoặc không tuân theo; sự thách thức*
18. constitute ['kɔnstitju:t] (v) *cấu thành; tạo thành*
19. arbitrarily ['ɑ:bitrərili] (adv) *tùy tiện; chuyên quyền, độc đoán*
20. arouse [ə'raʊz] (v) *đánh thức; khuấy động, gợi*
21. crusade [kru:'seid] (n) *chiến dịch; cuộc vận động lớn*
22. claim [kleim] (v) *khẳng định, quả quyết*
23. excessive [ik'sesiv] (adj) *quá thể, quá đáng*
24. anarchy ['ænəki] (n) *tình trạng vô chính phủ; tình trạng hỗn loạn*
25. prevail [pri'veil] (v) *thắng thế, chiếm ưu thế; phổ biến khắp*
26. licentious [lai'senʃəs] (adj) *bừa bãi; phóng túng*
27. oppress [ə'pres] (v) *áp bức, đàn áp*

72. Discuss the role of the police force in society

Hãy thảo luận vai trò của lực lượng cảnh sát trong xã hội

The police force plays a vital[1] role in the maintenance of law and order in society. It is a source of moral strength, confidence and happiness to all individuals who seek[2] to live a good life in society.

The ideal of a police force has been conceived[3] centuries ago, when lawless acts were committed[4] everywhere; but it was only in the nineteenth century that effectual steps were taken to build up a strong police force in almost every country. Life, before the introduction of the police force, was indeed insecure. Violent acts such as murder, were committed with impunity[5] by cruel and reckless men. Even those who were weak and feared revenge by stronger men nevertheless found it safe sometimes to commit lesser crimes such as theft and robbery. Without the restraining influence of a powerful organisation such as the police force, the passions of men were aroused easily, and lawlessness prevailed everywhere. Individuals grouped themselves together and terrorised whole villages and towns, and there were wars between rival[6] groups. This state of affairs caused great sorrow and acute anxiety to whole

communities and everyone lived in constant fear, uncertain even about his immediate future.

The establishment of the police force, however, has changed the state of affairs in society. The police force has enabled the law courts, which have existed since ancient[7] times, in certain countries even before the introduction of the police force, to function more efficiently. Criminals are apprehended[8] and punished, with the help of the police force, to deter[9] others from committing acts injurious to innocent citizens. Most people therefore have learned to control their criminal tendencies. The alertness[10] of the police force in the detection of crimes has not only discouraged[11] most people from breaking the laws of society but also compelled[12] them to exercise restrain and self-discipline. Consequently[13], society as a whole is more peaceful than what it was before the establishment of the police force.

As the aim of the police force is to promote the welfare of society, it is constantly engaged in creating the conditions in which people can live and pursue their own affairs without interference[14] from thoughtless individuals. The rights of every member in society are protected by the courts through the agency of the police force, which is therefore a source of inspiration and hope to all law-abiding[15] citizens. Any interference with the rights of one citizen by another is frowned[16] upon by the police force.

In their efforts to promote the welfare of society the police force extends its activities even to the remotest regions of the country. If a man is lost in a dense forest or at sea by his own fault or otherwise, members of the force do their utmost to find and bring him back to his family, however unpleasant the effort may prove[17]. Seldom do they give up their search if they are certain that the man still survives. Dedicated[18] to the service of society, they are prepared to work under any conditions to protect a person, sometimes even at the risk of losing their own lives.

The knowledge of the activities in which the police force is engaged has increased the confidence and moral strength of people in society. Even the cripple and invalid are given every protection. Thus, people today can live in greater security and happiness than they could before. Society therefore owes a great debt of gratitude[19] to the police force.

NEW WORDS

1. vital ['vaitl] (adj) *sống còn, quan trọng*

2. seek [si:k] (v) *mưu cầu, theo đuổi*
3. conceive [kən'si:v] (v) *hình thành (một ý nghĩ, kế hoạch...) trong đầu; quan niệm*
4. commit [kə'mit] (v) *phạm (lỗi, tội)*
5. impunity [im'pju:niti] (n) *sự không bị trừng phạt*
6. rival ['raivəl] (adj) *đối địch, kình địch, cạnh tranh*
7. ancient ['einʃənt] (adj) *xưa, cổ*
8. apprehend [,æpri'hend] (v) *bắt, tóm, nắm lấy*
9. deter [di'tə:] (v) *ngăn cản, ngăn chặn, cản trở; làm nản lòng*
10. alertness [ə'lə:tnis] (n) *sự tỉnh táo, sự cảnh giác*
11. discourage [dis'kʌridʒ] (v) *làm ngã lòng, làm nản lòng; làm mất hết can đảm, làm chán nản*
12. compell [kəm'pel] (v) *bắt phải, bắt buộc, ép, thúc ép*
13. consequently ['kɔnsikwəntli] (adv) *do đó, vì vậy, bởi vậy, cho nên*
14. interference [,intə'fiərəns] (n) *sự can thiệp; sự xen vào*
15. law-abiding [lɔ: ə'baidiŋ] *trung thành với pháp luật, tuân theo luật pháp*
16. frown [fraʊn] (v) *không bằng lòng; phản đối*
17. prove [pru:v] (v) *tỏ ra; chứng tỏ; chứng minh*
18. dedicated ['dedikeitid] (adj) *tận tụy, tận tâm*
19. gratitude ['grætitju:d] (n) *lòng biết ơn, sự nhớ ơn*

73. Discuss the view that tolerance[1] is essential for peace and harmony in any community or country

Hãy thảo luận quan điểm cho rằng lòng khoan dung là yếu tố thiết yếu cho hòa bình và hòa hợp trong bất kỳ cộng đồng hay quốc gia nào

The progress of any community or country depends largely on the conduct[2] of the people who reside[3] in it. Discontent, jealousies, prejudices[4], and intolerance among a few of the people can cause great damage to the whole community or country.

Gregarious[5] by nature, men hate to live in isolation. The urge for association, therefore, enables men to tolerate the views and habits of others, to great extent. Most men have come to realise that the cohesion

of society cannot be secured without the exercise of tolerance on the part of its members.

A community or country is composed of various types of people, whose psychological[6] social and temperamental[7] attitudes and needs are not the same. In a great number of cases, there are fundamental differences even in race, language and religion among the people. This is the result of the economic and social necessities of the modern age, which have compelled people to leave their original homes and live among people of foreign descent. These diversities[8] in a community or country necessitate[9] the maintenance of a tolerant attitude on the part of the people towards one another. They have to respect the cultural and social habits and beliefs of one another and refrain[10] themselves from doing, or saying things which might offend the susceptibilities[11] of some people. The racial and religious clashes[12] that have occurred in various parts of the world indicate the damage that the expression of hatred[13] and prejudice can cause in a country. Even differences in the colour of the skin can cause trouble and violence in a community, and when passions are aroused, men lose their reason and sense of proportion[14] and indulge[15] in the most barbaric[16] acts. Innocent lives become the victims of insensate[17] cruelty.

That tolerance is essential for peace and harmony in a country could be illustrated by reference to the people in Malaysia, a country in which people of various races reside. Despite[18] cultural, racial and religious differences among themselves, the people here have lived for generations in peace and harmony. They have also helped one another in various ways at various times. It must be admitted, however, there have been a few incidents from time to time caused by communal[19] differences in certain localities, yet they can hardly be attributed[20] to the general uprising[21] of the races against one another. In fact, the goodwill that prevails among the different races of people here has contributed[22] to the development of a new nation, which has become the envy[23] of many countries. The racial unity among the people is the main factor that has contributed to the progress of the country in all spheres[24] of activity.

Another country that deserves mention is the United States of America. The people of this country too are made up of a diversity of races and cultures. Yet, by tolerance, co-operation and goodwill among the people as a whole, it has become the richest country in the world. All

this proves what could be achieved by the people of a community or country who exercise tolerance among themselves.

NEW WORDS

1. tolerance ['tɔlərəns] (n) *sự khoan dung, lòng khoan dung; sự tha thứ*
2. conduct ['kɔndʌkt] (n) *hạnh kiểm; tư cách đạo đức*
3. reside [ri'zaid] (v) *có nhà của mình ở một nơi nhất định; sinh sống; cư trú*
4. prejudice ['predʒudis] (n) *định kiến, thành kiến, sự thiên kiến*
5. gregarious [gri'geəriəs] (adj) *sống thành tập thể*
6. psychological [,saikə'lɔdʒikl] (adj) *(thuộc) tâm lý*
7. temperamental [,temprə'mentl] (adj) *thất thường, hay thay đổi; không bình tĩnh, không kiên định*
8. diversity [dai'və:siti] (n) *tính đa dạng*
9. necessitate [ni'sesiteit] *đòi hỏi phải, cần phải có*
10. refrain [ri'frein] (v) *tự kiềm chế làm việc gì, cố nhịn, cố nín*
11. susceptibility [sə,septə'biləti] (n) *tính nhạy cảm, tính dễ xúc cảm; (số nhiều) tính dễ tự ái*
12. clash [klæʃ] (n) *sự xung đột, sự va chạm, sự mâu thuẫn, sự bất đồng*
13. hatred ['heitrid] (n) (n) *lòng căm thù/căm hờn/căm ghét*
14. proportion [prə'pɔ:ʃn] (n) *sự cân xứng, sự cân đối*
15. indulge [in'dʌldʒ] (v) *ham mê, theo đuổi*
16. barbaric [bɑ:'bærik] (adj) *dã man, man rợ*
17. insensate [in'senseit] (adj) *không cảm xúc; nhẫn tâm; điên rồ, ngu dại*
18. despite [dis'pait] (prep) *bất chấp, mặc dù*
19. communal ['kɔmjunl] (adj) *(thuộc) các nhóm chủng tộc và tôn giáo đối lập ở một vùng*
20. attribute ['ætribju:t] (v) *cho là do, quy cho*
21. uprising ['ʌpraiziŋ] (n) *cuộc nổi dậy; cuộc khởi nghĩa, cuộc nổi loạn*
22. contribute [kən'tribju:t] (n) *đóng góp, góp phần*
23. envy ['envi] (n) *sự thèm muốn, sự ghen tị, sự đố kỵ*
24. sphere [sfiə] (n) *lĩnh vực, phạm vi, tầm ảnh hưởng*

74. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of having too many university graduates in your country

Hãy thảo luận về những thuận lợi và bất lợi của việc quá nhiều người tốt nghiệp đại học tại đất nước bạn

University education <u>confers</u>[1] many benefits on the individual. It develops his <u>intellect</u>[2] and broadens his outlook on life, and enables him to <u>discriminate</u>[3] between the good and the bad. Thus, in the past, only those who sought to acquire these benefits proceeded to the various universities in the world. Today, however, men are usually driven to the universities by economic necessity. Few of them seek the true benefits of education, for the growing competition for positions in the various professions has made it difficult to secure proper employment without some university degrees. As a <u>consequence</u>[4], there are a large number of university graduates today in almost every country.

The advantages of having too many university graduates in a country, however, are many. In my country, for example, the presence of a large number of graduates would enable the government of my country to find <u>sufficient</u>[5] men to <u>assume</u>[6] responsible positions in the various administrative departments. It would also raise the status of the country in the eyes of the world, as one with a high <u>literacy</u>[7] rate. The <u>efficiency</u>[8] of the administrative organs of the state would also be increased, and in time of national crises, the government could draw on the intellectual resources of the people. Even the younger generation of men would benefit from the contacts with university graduates. They would draw inspiration from the work of the graduates and themselves develop, consciously or unconsciously, some of the mental abilities of the graduates. In other words, the presence of a large number of university graduates would create an atmosphere <u>conducive</u>[9] to the mental development of the younger people in the country.

The various private firms and industries too would benefit from the presence of large number of university graduates in my country. It would <u>facilitate</u>[10] the selection of suitable men for positions of responsibility in the firms and industries. This would contribute <u>substantially</u>[11] to the progress and productivity of the business concerns.

There would, however, also be certain disadvantages in having too many university graduates in my country. The worst of them would be that people without university qualifications would find themselves in a precarious[12] position. Good positions in the various professions would be closed to them. Thus, they would have to be content with humble[13] positions and meagre[14] incomes, without any prospects of promotion in their respective places of work. Besides, the general drop in salary scales[15] owing to[16] the competition among graduates for position, would further add to the misery of those without university training, for employers would always look for university graduates, even for low positions.

Another disadvantage would be that those without university degrees would be regarded as ignorant and of no consequence. They would receive little respect, unless they were wealthy. Though the university graduates may not deliberately[17] adopt[18] such an attitude towards them, yet they would always remain sensitive to any remarks upon their abilities. Such a situation would produce a group of disgruntled[19] men, and there would be much unemployment among those without university education, thus giving rise to many problems in the country.

NEW WORDS

1. confer [kən'fə:] (v) *trao hoặc tặng*
2. intellect ['intəlekt] (n) *khả năng hiểu biết; trí tuệ; trí năng*
3. discriminate [dis'krimineit] (v) *phân biệt*
4. consequence ['kɔnsikwəns] (n) *hậu quả, kết quả*
5. sufficient [sə'fiʃnt] (adj) *đủ*
6. assume [ə'sju:m] (v) *nắm lấy, chiếm lấy*
7. literacy ['litərəsi] (n) *sự biết viết, sự biết đọc*
8. efficiency [i'fiʃənsi] (adj) *hiệu quả; năng lực, khả năng*
9. conducive [kən'dju:siv] (adj) *có ích, có lợi*
10. facilititate [fə'siliteit] (v) *làm cho dễ dàng; làm cho thuận tiện*
11. substantially [səb'stænʃəli] (adv) *về thực chất, về căn bản*
12. precarious [pri'keəriəs] (adj) *tạm, tạm thời, nhất thời, không ổn định; không chắc chắn, bấp bênh*
13. humble ['hʌmbl] (adj) *thấp kém, hèn mọn*
14. meagre ['mi:gə] (adj) *nghèo nàn, xoàng, sơ sài, đạm bạc*
15. scale [skeil] (n) *quy mô, phạm vi*

16. owing to ['əʊiŋ tə] (prep) *do vì, bởi vì*

17. deliberately [di'libəritli] (adv) *một cách có tính toán, cố ý, chủ tâm*

18. adopt [ə'dɔpt] (v) *chấp nhận, thông qua*

19. disgruntled [dis'grʌntld] (adj) *bực tức, bất bình*

75. War and Peace

Chiến tranh và hòa bình

Since the time men learned to live in communities, in the remote past, wars have been fought at regular intervals[1] in various parts of the world. In fact, the history of the human race is mainly a record of the battles and wars fought in the past between communities and nations.

Wars are caused mainly by human greed[2] and ambition. In the early days of men's existence, many communities lived a very hard life, owing perhaps to the lack of geographical advantages or intellectual ability. As a result, the prosperity[3] of other communities aroused their greed and envy, and wars between communities became inevitable. One side fought to conquer[4] the prosperous communities in order to gain control of the means of prosperity, and the other side fought to defend[5] its independence and way of life. With the passage of time, the communities developed into nations, and wars were fought on a bigger scale; but the basic causes of war remained the same. It was only occasionally that battles were fought with other aims such as the capture of a woman to satisfy the sexual lust[6] of a conqueror or ruler.

However, success in wars stirred[7] the ambition of many nations. Wars were then fought for domination[8] and extension of power. Several small nations soon came under the dominion[9] of a powerful country, which then developed into an Empire. The Roman Empire, for example, was created mainly by conquest. Even the personal ambitions of some individuals have been the cause of wars at times. The ambitions of Napoleon and Hitler for world conquest caused many battles, in which millions of people, young and old, gave their lives.

The devastation[10] caused by wars, however, has always aroused the conscience[11] of several nations, and attempts have been made by such nations to prevent wars in the future. Their leaders have met at various times, in the course of history, to discuss peace and to find a way of

removing the causes of war. It is this urge that led to the creation of the United Nations, after the failure[12] of the League of Nations[13], which today is doing its utmost to maintain peace between nations.

But the desire peace has instead led to further wars, for peace often demands the destruction[14] of the ambitions of those who begin wars. The wars begun by Napoleon and Hitler could be ended only by fighting further wars to destroy these men, who have been responsible for the greatest sufferings in the history of the world. Human ambition, however, is indifferent to the lessons of history. In times of wars, men seek peace; but when there is peace, there are attempts to begin wars. Once a war is begun, however, those responsible for it are crushed[15] in the end. Yet ambitious countries and individuals are still trying to extend their power, but they are being opposed[16] by those who love peace. Thus, wars will continue to exist, while at the same time attempts will be made to attain[17] peace in the world.

NEW WORDS

1. at regular intervals ['intəvəl] (n) *đều đặn*
2. greed [gri:d] (n) *tính tham lam*
3. prosperity [prɔ'sperəti] (n) *sự thịnh vượng; sự phồn vinh*
4. conquer ['kɔŋkə] (v) *chinh phục, chế ngự; đoạt, xâm chiếm*
5. defend [di'fend] (v) *bảo vệ*
6. lust ['lʌst] (n) *sự thèm khát, lòng tham*
7. stir [stə:] (v) *kích thích, khích động, khêu gợi, xúi gục; gây ra*
8. domination [,dɔmi'neiʃn] (n) *sự thống trị*
9. dominion [də'minjən] (n) *quyền thống trị, quyền chi phối*
10. devastation [,devəs'teiʃn] (n) *sự tàn phá, sự phá huỷ*
11. conscience ['kɔnʃns] (n) *lương tâm*
12. failure ['feiljə] (n) *sự thất bại, cố gắng không thành công*
13. League of Nations (n) *Hội Quốc Liên*
14. destruction [dis'trʌkʃn] (n) *sự phá huỷ, sự tiêu diệt*
15. crush [krʌʃ] (v) *tiêu diệt, diệt; dẹp tan, làm tiêu tan*
16. oppose [ə'pouz] (v) *chống đối, phản đối*
17. attain [ə'tein] (v) *đạt được, giành được*

76. Do you think that a literary education is preferable to a scientific education today?

Bạn có nghĩ rằng ngày nay việc giáo dục về văn chương được ưa thích hơn việc giáo dục về khoa học không?

A literary education has always been regarded as indispensable[1] to the development of character and a broad outlook on life. Whether such an education is preferable to a scientific education is, however, a moot[2] question.

Before the advent of the Scientific Age most scholars pursued a literary education which conferred many benefits on them. It not only gave them an insight into the affairs of the world but also equipped[3] them with a vocabulary that enabled them to express their views and feelings with cogency[4] and facility. Besides, it developed their mental ability and intellectual powers, and many of the achieved distinction[5] in public life as forcible[6] speakers and writers or even as lawyers and political thinkers. Having discovered the benefits of such an education, ambitious men in all countries proceeded to the universities or other institutions of learning to acquire the advantages of a literary education, and this tendency is discernible[7] even today, though a scientific education is being considered more advantageous to the needs of the present day.

The inventions of the modern age have indeed revolutionised society. Numerous goods are being produced, with rapidity unknown before in various parts of the earth with the aid of science and scientists of all countries are continuing to exert[8] their brains to extend the realms[9] of science. Every invention has helped to increase the leisure and convenience of men everywhere, and the demand for goods is increasing everyday. As a consequence, more and more machines are being invented to increase the production of goods within the shortest time possible.

Every mechanical invention, however, has to be operated by skilled men. The larger the machine the more complicated[10] its operation, and any mechanical faults in it can be detected only by men with a scientific education, who are but few in number compared with those with a literary education. It is this scarcity[11] of men with a scientific education that has led to the assumption that a scientific education today is preferable to a literary education. The large factories require men to operate machinery, dealers in motor-vehicles require men for all types of work in the industry, and there are a diversity[12] of other industries which

are looking for men with a scientific education. The demand for men with a scientific education is, therefore, great, and this serves as an incentive[13] to young men to acquire industrial and technical skills, for the possession of such skills will not only enable them to secure remunerative[14] occupations but also enable them to manage their own factories or workshops in the future to increase their earnings.

All this, however, does not imply[15] that the man with a literary education is losing his importance rapidly. In truth, he is an indispensable person even today in various departments of human activity. He provides the managerial skill in an industry, contributes his literary abilities to the promotion of literacy in the country, provides ministerial[16] and judicial[17] services in the state, and performs a host of other functions.

Thus, it is not possible to say with finality that a certain type of education is preferable to another. It is for the individual to make the best of the type of education that he has received.

NEW WORDS

1. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *rất cần thiết; không thể thiếu*
2. moot [mu:t] (adj) *có thể bàn luận*
3. equip [i'kwip] (v) *trang bị*
4. cogency ['kəʊdʒənsi] (n) *sự vững chắc; sức thuyết phục*
5. distinction [dis'tiŋkʃn] (n) *sự ưu tú; sự xuất chúng; sự lỗi lạc*
6. forcible ['fɔ:səbl] (adj) *sinh động; đầy sức thuyết phục*
7. discernible [di'sə:nəbl] (adj) *có thể nhận thức rõ, có thể thấy rõ*
8. exert [ig'zə:t] (v) *đưa vào sử dụng; áp dụng*
9. realm [relm] (n) *lĩnh vực*
10. complicated ['kɔmplikeitid] (adj) *phức tạp, rắc rối*
11. scarcity ['skeəsəti] (n) *sự khan hiếm; sự khó tìm*
12. diversity [dai'və:siti] (n) *sự đa dạng*
13. incentive [in'sentiv] (n) *sự khuyến khích; sự khích lệ, động viên*
14. remunerative [ri'mju:nərətiv] (adj) *được trả hậu, có lợi*
15. imply [im'plai] (v) *hàm ý, ngụ ý*
16. ministerial [,minis'tiəriəl] (adj) *(thuộc) bộ trưởng*
17. judicial [dʒu:'diʃəl] *thuộc hoặc bởi một toà án*

77. Courage

Lòng can đảm

Courage, like all human qualities, is an abstract thing; but it is this quality in man that has enabled him to advance against all natural obstacles[1] through the centuries.

Endowed[2] with intelligence and manual[3] skills, man's courage, even in the early days of his existence, enabled him to accept the challenges[4] of nature. He not only lived in the midst of wild animals but also began to domesticate many of them for his own advantage. Soon, even the most ferocious[5] and largest of animals learnt to respect his courage. They began to avoid him as far as they could.

Indeed, without courage man would never be able to advance from the primitive stage. He would never try to reach the skies or explore the depths of the oceans; but impelled by courage, he left his immediate confines to defy[6] nature, and soon made the world more hospitable[7] and secure for himself. It is this irrespressible[8] energy of man, aided by his courage, that has contributed to the comfort and happiness that people everywhere enjoy today.

Courage is therefore indispensable[9] to almost all human activities. Men need courage to face their enemies and the uncertainties of life. They need courage to operate machinery, to fly aeroplanes, to construct tall buildings. In fact, they need courage to meet all the dangers that constantly threaten them in all their pursuits. Even to accept the responsibilities of a family requires extreme courage.

Human courage and valour have been displayed most strikingly[10] in all the battles that have been fought in the history of mankind. Men have fought against men with deadly weapons to protect themselves their countries, families and home. For the protection and comfort of their families, men have also faced other dangers. They have defied dangerous currents in rivers to bring food for their families by boats and rafts. They have also defied storm and battled the waves of the oceans to extract food from them.

Courage, however, does not assert itself[11] always. The instinct of self-preservation[12] usually impels men to seek safety in fight or concealment whenever there is a threat to personal security. It is in moments of desperation[13] that courage asserts itself and enables one to meet all threats; and it is in such moments that men also discover their own

physical strength, and other advantages of resistance. For instance, a man who is attacked by an animal will fight fiercely[14] in an effort to avert tragedy to himself, and in the process discover his own strength and the advantages of using certain weapons to overpower[15] his adversary[16]

Feelings of loyalty and devotion[17] too have often aroused the courage of amen. A person who is devoted to his family fights tooth and nail to protect his family from destruction or extinction, whatever the consequences to himself. Similarly, a loyal servant may give his life for the protection of his master.

Thus, courage is the most important quality in man. He needs it for his own advancement and to meet all the challenges of his existence.

NEW WORDS

1. obstacle ['ɒbstəkl] (n) *sự cản trở, sự trở ngại; chướng ngại vật*
2. endow [in'daʊ] (v) *phú cho, ban cho*
3. manual ['mænjuəl] (adj) *thủ công*
4. challenge ['tʃælindʒ] (n) *sự thách thức*
5. ferocious [fə'rəʊʃəs] (adj) *dữ tợn, hung ác, dã man, tàn bạo*
6. hospitable ['hɔspitəbl] (adj) *mến khách, hiếu khách*
7. irrepressible [,iri'presəbl] (adj) *không thể kìm nén được*
8. indispensable [,indis'pensəbl] (adj) *tuyệt đối cần thiết; không thể thiếu được*
9. strikingly ['straikiŋli] (adv) *nổi bật; đáng chú ý, gây ấn tượng*
10. assert oneself [ə'sə:t] (v) *khẳng định, quả quyết; đòi quyền lợi của mình*
11. self-preservation [,self prezə:'veiʃn] (n) *sự thúc bách tự nhiên để sinh tồn; sự tự bảo toàn (mạng sống); bản năng tự bảo toàn*
12. desperation [,despə'reiʃn] (n) *sự tuyệt vọng*
13. fiercely ['fiəsli] (adv) *dữ dội, mãnh liệt*
14. overpower [,əʊvə'paʊə(r)] (v) *áp đảo, chế ngự; khuất phục*
15. adversary ['ædvəsəri] (n) *kẻ địch, kẻ thù; đối phương, đối thủ*
16. devotion [di'vəʊʃn] (n) *sự tận tuỵ, sự thành tâm; sự hiến dâng*

78. "Education makes people easy to lead, but difficult to persuade; easy to govern, but impossible to enslave". Discuss.

Giáo dục khiến người dân trở nên dễ được lãnh đạo nhưng khó bị thuyết phục, dễ được cai trị nhưng không thể bị biến thành nô lệ". Hãy thảo luận.

Since the dawn of civilization, great thinkers, like Plato and Aristotle, have given much thought and eloquence[1] to the spread of education to the remotest regions of the earth, for it is realised that education confers many benefits on the individual. It develops the intellect and enables one to discriminate[2] between the good and the bad.

The mental abilities that develop from education enable the educated people in a country to grasp the realities of the times. They are able to obtain information from all sources and are therefore capable of making judgements on political or social issues with a great measure of accuracy[3]. They are also able to decide what is good for themselves and for their country. Such people are indeed easy to lead, once they are convinced that a certain course of action will operate to their own advantage. They realise the value of leadership and discipline[4] in the pursuit of national, social or personal progress, and are therefore willing to accept the leadership of any competent individual or organisation for the realisation[5] of their aims. Such people are, however, too conscious of their rights and personal dignity and are therefore difficult to persuade. They resent all attempts to persuade them out of their own plans and way of thinking. Anyone whose way of thinking is different from theirs will indeed find it extremely difficult to impose his views upon them.

The fact that education enables individuals to understand the political and social problems and affairs of the time makes it easy to govern them. It is on them that governments depend for efficiency and political stability[6]. They contribute their intellectual resources and personal abilities and experience to the service of their countries, and often also influence the decisions of political leaders. They accept the major decisions of their governments, and express their grievances[7] without causing chaos in their countries. There are, however, numerous instances of educated people resorting[8] to violence as a means of achieving certain political aims today; but such conduct could be attributed[9] to the lack of true education and to many social frustrations and political motives. In

general, people who are really educated are fully aware of the consequences of expressing their views on political issues, and they therefore either accept the existing conditions in their countries, however unpleasant they may be, unless the conditions tend to enslaves them, or resort to constitutional means to express their views and grievances. They cannot be easily incited[10] to commit violence, for no one will act contrary to his own interests. This indicates the ease with which educated people can be governed.

Education, however, especially in countries where political freedom is permitted[11] to the fullest extent, also acquaints people with their constitutional rights. They become aware of their freedom and any attempt to impose any restrictions[12] upon their liberty will be resisted by them, unless they are convinced that the security of the nation requires the imposition of such restrictions. They will make use of all their learning and mental qualities as well as their literary and dialectical[13] skills to influence others to bring about the collapse[14] of the government that tries to enslave them and much trouble can ensue from this course of action. This makes the enslavement of educated people almost impossible.

The statement that, "Education makes people easy to lead, but difficult to persuade; easy to govern, but impossible to enslave" therefore contains much truth in it.

NEW WORDS

1. eloquence ['eləkwəns] (n) *tài hùng biện*
2. discriminate [dis'krimineit] (v) *phân biệt*
3. accuracy ['ækjurəsi] (n) *sự đúng đắn, sự chính xác; độ chính xác*
4. discipline ['disiplin] (n) *kỷ luật*
5. stability [stə'biləti] (n) *sự ổn định*
6. grievance ['gri:vəns] (n) *mối bất bình; lời phàn nàn; lời than phiền*
7. resort [ri:'zɔ:t] (v) *phải sử dụng đến; phải viện đến*
8. attribute ['ætribju:t] (v) *cho là do; quy cho*
9. enslave [in'sleiv] (v) *biến thành nô lệ, bắt làm nô lệ, nô dịch hoá*
10. incite [in'sait] *kích động, xúi giục; khuyến khích*
11. permit ['pə:mit] (v) *cho phép, thừa nhận*
12. restriction [ri'strikʃn] (n) *sự hạn chế, sự giới hạn; sự bị hạn chế*
13. dialectical [,daiə'lektikəl] (adj) *biện chứng*
14. collapse [kə'læps] (n) *sự sụp đổ; sự suy sụp*

79. Discuss the part played by science in the promotion of public health during the last hundred years

Hãy thảo luận về vai trò của khoa học trong việc nâng cao sức khỏe người dân trong suốt một thế kỷ qua

One of the most striking features of the present century is the progress of science and its effects on almost every aspect of social life. Building on the foundations[1] laid by their precedessors[2] the scientists of today are carrying their investigation into ever widening fields of knowledge.

The contribution of science to the promotion of public health in the last hundred years has indeed been tremendous. The unceasing[3] work and experiments of scientists during this time have led to numerous discoveries and removed many misconceptions[4] that many people had before, regarding health illness. The causes of many of the diseases have become generally known. Indeed, many of the facts relating to public health, which are now regarded as common knowledge, were unknown even to the doctors of those days. The fact that germs[5] were the cause of most of the common diseases was not realised by doctors of high repute in the not very distant past. Today, however, even a pupil of a primary school has some knowledge of the destruction that germs can cause. The discovery of germs has indeed revolutionised all medical concepts of disease and illness. Everywhere people have come to realise the importance of cleanliness in the prevention of disease.

The researchers or scientists of all countries have also revealed other secrets. It is now known that illness and diseases can be caused by other living creatures also, such as flies, insects and even birds, animals and human beings. Their discoveries have contributed to the progress of medical science. Today, people in all parts of the world are doing their utmost to destroy the creatures that carry diseases. At the same time, however, scientists have also discovered that certain animals and creatures could provide some cure for a variety of diseases that are dangerous to human beings. Even the curative value of certain plants has been discovered.

An important result of the discoveries of scientists has been that, they have also found the cure of almost every disease. It is a practice of the scientists to work for the discovery of a cure as soon as they have

discovered the causes of a certain disease. This service of the scientists has promoted the welfare of the human race. In this field of research, scientists make no distinction between races. Whatever they discover is used for the advantage of men everywhere. The progress of humanity is their main aim.

The work of medical scientists also reduced pain to great extent. In the past, operations were performed on individuals in a very crude[6] manner. Amputation[7] was a very painful affair. Today, however, the whole body of a man could be cut open without his feeling any pain by the use of chloroform[8]. In this way science has relieved the misery of men tremendously.

Another very important discovery has been that, water, without which life cannot exist, sometimes contains the elements of destruction as well. Impure water could spread disease and death at tremendous speed. This knowledge has led people in all parts of the world to use only pure water for all domestic and other purposes. Water is considered so important a factor[9] in public health that all the governments of the world control its use for drinking purposes.

All these discoveries have indeed promoted public health during the last hundred years.

NEW WORDS

1. foundation [faun'deiʃn] (n) *sự thành lập, sự sáng lập, sự thiết lập*
2. precedessor ['pri:disesə(r)] (n) *người đi trước; người tiền nhiệm; bậc tiền bối*
4. unceasing [,ʌn'si:siŋ] (adj) *liên tục, không ngừng; không mệt mỏi*
4. misconception ['miskən'sepʃn] (n) *sự quan niệm sai, sự nhận thức sai, sự hiểu sai*
5. germ [dʒə:m] (n) *vi trùng; mầm bệnh*
6. crude [kru:d] (adj) *thô thiển; thô bạo*
7. amputation [,æmpju'teiʃn] (n) *thủ thuật cắt cụt*
8. chloroform ['klɔrəfɔ:m] (n) cloroform - *một loại hóa chất gây mê*
9. factor ['fæktə] (n) *nhân tố*

80. Do you think that the United Nations Organisation perform a useful function in promoting peace and happiness in the world?

Bạn có nghĩ rằng Liên Hợp Quốc thực hiện chức năng hữu ích trong việc thúc đẩy hòa bình và hạnh phúc trên thế giới không?

A successor[1] to the former League of Nations[2], the United Nation Organisation has played a unique role in international relations, since its inception[3] at the end of the Second World War.

The failure of the League of Nations to live up to the ideals of peace and harmony among nations revealed many weaknesses and deficiencies in that organisation, which could not prevent bellicosity[4] or belligerency[5]. But leaders of the world were determined to continue their efforts for the prevention of further wars, and it was this aspiration for peace that led to the creation of a new and more powerful organisation than the League of Nations Organisation. The elapse of about a quarter of a century, since its creation, without another world was, and the tremendous expansion[6] of its international activities, indicates that the United Nations Organisation has not only acquired viability but also achieved a considerable measure of success in the pursuit of peace. Today, the activities of this organisation extend to all fields of human endeavour[7].

It is true, however, that wars have been fought in various parts of the world such as the Korean and Congo Wars, despite the existence of this large organisation, whose members include almost all the important countries of the world, including Communist China, who had at one time earned the odium[8] of many countries as the instigator[9] of wars. Wars have also been fought between its own members, in defiance of one of its main principles forbidding wars among its members. Even today there is a war in Bosnia and perhaps there will be more wars in the future; but the armed intervention of the United Nations Organisation in all the major conflicts has at least restricted the wars to certain areas and removed the threat of another world war. In many cases the United Nations has also been able to persuade the belligerent parties to cease fighting and agree to settle their political differences by negotiations[10]. This fact itself proves the usefulness of this organisation, though doubts have been expressed in certain quarters about its effectiveness.

The United Nations Organisation has also made a great contribution to the advancement of the people of the world. Through its subsidiary organs[11], such as the World Health Organisation (W.H.O.) and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (U.N.E.S.C.O.) it has extended its activities to the remotest regions of the earth. It has at its disposal the services of a large number of specialists of all nationalities, who are sent round the world to contribute their talent, experience and knowledge to the welfare of the human race. These specialists have worked with a missionary zeal[12] in the countries to which they were sent, and as a result of their work and advice, many countries have made tremendous progress in all spheres of national life. Doctors, scientists and educationalists from the United Nations, as well as the financial aid that this organisation has given to several countries have played their part in promoting the happiness and welfare of the peoples of the world.

It is therefore hard to deny that the United Nations does perform a useful function in the promotion of peace and happiness in the world.

NEW WORDS:

1. successor [sək'sesə] (n) *người kế tục, kế thừa*
2. League of Nations (n) *Hội Quốc Liên*
3. inception [in'sepʃn] (n) *sự khởi đầu, sự bắt đầu*
4. bellicosity [,beli'kɔsiti] (n) *sự hiếu chiến; tính hay gây gổ*
5. belligerency [bi'lidʒərənsi] (n) *sự tham chiến*
6. expansion [iks'pænʃn] (n) *sự mở rộng*
7. endeavour [in'devə] (n) *sự cố gắng, sự nỗ lực*
8. odium ['əʊdjəm] (n) *sự chê bai, dè bỉu*
9. instigator ['instigeitə] *kẻ xúi giục, kẻ xúi bẩy; kẻ chủ mưu*
10. negotiation [ni,gouʃi'eiʃn] (n) *sự điều đình, sự đàm phán*
11. organs ['ɔ:gən] (n) *tổ chức (chính thức); cơ quan*
12. zeal [zi:l] (n) *lòng sốt sắng, lòng hăng hái; nhiệt tâm, nhiệt huyết*

81. What in your opinion are the qualities of a good judge?

Quan điểm của bạn về các phẩm chất của một quan tòa tốt là gì?

The judiciary[1], especially in a democratic state, is well known for its impartiality[2]. In numerous cases it has taken decisions even against the state for the achievement of the ends of justice. This impartiality of the judicial system in a democratic state can be attributed to the good qualities of judges who have always asserted their independence from executive[3] control.

The qualities of a good judge include patience, wisdom, courage, firmness, alertness, incorruptibility[4] and the gifts of sympathy and insight. In a democracy, a judge is accorded great respect by the state as well as its citizens. He is not only permitted to assert his freedom and impartiality but also expected to use all his forensic[5] skill to protect the rights of the individual against arbitrariness[6]. Through such a state of affairs makes it easy for the judge to exercise his functions, he still requires many qualities to perform his duties effectively.

In the execution of his functions, a judge has to exercise patience and alertness so that he can hear all the arguments of the contending parties to a dispute and arrive at a wise decision. An impatient judge can hardly act with reason, however wise he may be. Patience and alertness are therefore essential qualities of a good judge.

The decisions of a judge sometimes provoke the anger of certain individuals and he becomes the victim of revenge. In condemning[7] a person to death, for example, a judge might cause the relatives of the condemned man to nurse feelings of revenge against him. That life of the judge is thus exposed to danger, sometimes even after his retirement from judicial service. Therefore, a good judge is also a man of courage, who is incorruptible and prepared to accept the consequences of his decisions. A pusillanimous[8] and corruptible judge is no bulwark[9] of justice.

A good judge is, however, not destitute[10] of sympathy. He considers the feelings of all parties with sympathy and understanding. His knowledge of the law and human affairs is so extensive that he experiences little difficulty in grasping the main issues of the dispute quickly. His insight into human nature enables him to detect the criminal almost immediately; yet he is prepared, at times to set the accused free if

the charge against him is not framed properly by the police. This proves his impartiality, an attribute that inspires the confidence of the citizens in his ability and sense of justice.

These arguments point to the conclusion that a good judge is a person of many qualities.

NEW WORDS:

1. judiciary [dʒu:'diʃəri] (n) *bộ máy tư pháp*
2. impartiality [im,pɑ:ʃi'æliti] (n) *tính công bằng, tính không thiên vị, tính vô tư*
3. executive [ig'zekjutiv] (adj) *thuộc về bên hành pháp*
4. incorruptibility ['inkə,rʌptə'biliti] (n) *tính không thể mua chuộc được; tính không thể hủ hoá được, tính liêm khiết*
5. forensic [fə'rensik] (adj) *(thuộc) pháp lý, (thuộc) toà án*
6. arbitrariness ['ɑ:bitrərinis] (n) *tính chuyên quyền, tính độc đoán, sự tuỳ tiện*
7. condemn [kən'dem] (v) *kết án, kết tội, xử, xử phạt; chỉ trích, lên án*
8. pusillanimous [,pju:si'læniməs] (adj) *nhát gan, rụt rè; nhu nhược, yếu hèn*
9. bulwark ['bulwək] (n) *bức tường thành; lực lượng bảo vệ*
10. destitute ['destitju:t] (adj) *thiếu thốn; nghèo túng, cơ cực*

82. "Great literature belongs not to one age but to all ages; not to one country but all countries". Discuss

"Tác phẩm văn học vĩ đại không thuộc về riêng một thời đại nào mà là thuộc về mọi thời đại; không phải của riêng một quốc gia nào mà là của mọi quốc gia". Hãy thảo luận.

Literature, a narrative[1] of human events, reflects all the hopes, emotions, feelings, sorrows and frustrations that men have had in the course of their long struggle for survival in this beautiful world. Its appeal is therefore universal.

Since the time men learned how to read and write, some people have always felt the urge to exercise their literary skills for the sheer pleasure of writing. Fascinated by the beauty of language and ideas, many

scholars, since the dawn of history, have engaged themselves in exploring new avenues of thought, and in the process contributed to the production of great literary works. The sufferings of humanity have also contributed their share in impelling writers in all lands to write in the most vivid and expressive language.

As man is the theme[2] of all literature, any great literature is appreciated in all countries, at all times. The works of great writers, such a Homer and Shakespeare, have indeed become immortal[3] for their universal appeal[4]. They have been read for centuries in all countries. Such writers have revealed human nature to all generation of men. It is now realised that the fundamental[5] emotions and desires of men are same everywhere, though they may be divided by race, language and culture. Even their problems are the same. An Asian has the same problems of obtaining food or for providing for his family as a European has. Both laugh at and cry for the same things. The recognition of these facts has increased the feelings of oneness among the people of the world.

The ideas that have been expressed by great writers have influenced the people of all countries. When a good idea is expressed by a writer of one country, it is absorbed[6] by people in many other lands. The ideas that the Greeks had centuries ago on a government and society have continued to influence the minds of men till this day. In the same way, the literature of many other countries has influenced the thinking of the peoples of the world.

Great literature reveals the common ties that exist among men. By emphasising the bonds[7] of sympathy between men, it helps the people of one country to look with affection upon the people of another country, and makes men conscious of their common destiny. For this reason, many great works in one language have been translated into several other languages. This had the effect of promoting better understanding among the people of the world and widening the mental horizons of men. There is therefore a great urge today to read the literature and history of all countries. Thus, there is much truth in the statement that "Great literature belongs not to one age but to all ages; not to one country but to all countries".

NEW WORDS:

1. narrative ['nærətiv] (n) *chuyện kể, bài tường thuật*

2. theme [θi:m] (n) *đề tài, chủ đề*
3. immortal [i'mɔ:tl] (adj) *bất tử, bất diệt, bất hủ*
4. appeal [ə'pi:l] (n) *sự kêu gọi, lời kêu gọi*
5. fundamental [,fʌndə'mentl] (adj) *cơ bản, cơ sở, chủ yếu*
6. absorb [əb'sɔ:b] (v) *hấp thu*
7. bond [bɔnd] (n) *sự ràng buộc, sự liên kết*

83. "Studies of Geography can make a great contribution to the service of man". Discuss

"Những nghiên cứu về địa lý có thể đóng một vai trò to lớn trong việc phục vụ loài người". Hãy thảo luận.

That man's survival on the earth depends largely on geographical factors[1] has been recognised since time immemorial. Without air and water which surround the earth, as well as food which can be derived from various sources in the world, the existence of life is indeed hard to conceive.

The realisation that life is dependent on geographical elements has led to an intensive study of Geography. Men who are engaged in the production of food are continuing their studies of the water, soils[2] and other factors which are essential for the growth of crops and livestock[3]. Such studies are continuing to yeild[4] useful results. It has come to be known that all plants and animals do not require the same conditions for survival, and that a plant or an animal that perishes[5] under certain conditions in one area could thrive[6] in a different environment. In other words, different plants and animals draw their nourishment[7] from different sources of the world. This knowledge has enabled producers of food to make the best use of their resources. No longer do they attempt to grow crops or livestock in areas which are known to be unsuitable for the purpose.

Geographical studies have also revealed new sources of power. The discovery of coal and mineral oil has revoultionised the lives of men in all parts of the world. Coal and mineral oil are used to operate machinery for the production of goods, for incineration[8] and illuminations[9], as well as for propulsion[10]. Many streets in all the towns in the world are illuminated by oil lamps; aeroplanes are propelled by mineral oil, and locomotives[11] require either coal or mineral oil for propulsion. Indeed, coal and mineral oil are used for a diversity of purposes today.

The discovery of other minerals too such as iron ore, has made a great contribution to the service of man. Iron is used for the construction of bridges and buildings, for the manufacture of motor vehicles and other means of transport, which are completely changed the social habits of men and for numerous other purposes. The discoveries and inventions of the modern age have increased men's leisure and comfort. Men no longer have to walk long distances to attend to their business. Fast running vehicles enable them to reach their places of work with ease and speed. All this is the result of the studies of Geography, to a great extent. In brief, modern civilisation is the product of the industrial developments that have taken place since the time men learned to exploit the mineral resources of the earth.

The advantages that men have derived from the use of the natural resources of the world have served as an incentive to deeper studies in Geography. More and more discoveries are being made by geographers and each discovery is adding substantially to the progress of the human race. Geographers are even exploring the depths of the oceans, in their eagerness[12] to make new contributions to knowledge and social progress, and they have achieved a great measure of success. Thus, it must be admitted that "Studies of Geography can make a great contribution to the service of man".

NEW WORDS

1. factor ['fæktə] (n) *nhân tố*
2. soil [sɔil] (n) *đất trồng*
3. livestock ['laivstɔk] (n) *vật nuôi, thú nuôi*
4. yield [ji:ld] (v) *mang đến, sinh ra*
5. perish ['periʃ] (v) *diệt vong*
6. thrive [θraiv] (v) *phát triển mạnh, lớn nhanh*
7. nourishment ['nʌriʃmənt] (n) *sự nuôi dưỡng; thực phẩm*
8. incineration [in,sinə'reiʃn] (n) *sự đốt*
9. illumination [i,lu:mi'neiʃn] (n) *sự chiếu sáng*
10. propulsion [prə'pʌlʃn] (n) *lực đẩy, sức đẩy*
11. locomotive ['loukəmoutiv] (n) *đầu máy (xe lửa)*
12. eagerness ['i:gənis] (n) *sự say mê, sự háo hức, sự hăm hở*

84. "The luxuries of toaay are the necessities of tomorrow". Discuss

"Sự xa xỉ của ngày hôm nay là những thứ cần thiết cho ngày mai". Hãy thảo luận

Men's activities in the early days of their existence were concentrated on the acquisitions[1] of sustenance[2]. With the passage of time, however, they began to learn how to use certain things which were not essential for their survival but important for their comforts. In modern terms, those things would be described as luxuries. As they progressed further, however, and sought to increase their comforts, they began to regard those things as necessities. This has been men's attitude towards all things, that is, in time they begin to regard as necessities what they originally regarded as luxuries.

Most of the things that we consider indispensable to our existence today were regarded only ass luxuries a few years ago. The radio, for example, has become a part and parcel[3] of modern life. The spread of education has sharpened the curiosity of men about world affairs, and the radio has become one of the main sources of information. It also provides much entertainment to all types of people. In the same way, motor vehicles which were used at first mainly by rich people and those engaged in trade and commerce, and were regarded as luxuries by others, have now come to be regarded as necessities by almost all working men. This is the result of the great economic and social changes that have occurred in the last few decades. More and more industries are being established in various parts of the world, with the result, that the activities of man too have increased tremendously. Workers have to travel great distances to earn their livelihood, and the limited time at their disposal[4] compels them to regard motor vehicles as indispensable to their activities.

The main reason for the acceptance as necessities what were at first regarded as luxuries is that, in course of time men come to realise the benefits and comfort that they derive from the use of those things. Almost every invention or discovery benefits society in some way, and when the advantages of using a thing are fully realised, men tend[5] to regard it as essential to their existence. Even decorative materials have acquired some importance in modern living, and many of them are considered necessities. Window curtains, for example, are now regarded as necessities, though in the past only the rich considered it worthwhile

to use them for decorative purposes. It has now become a convention that the things in private chambers of a house should not be exposed to the public gaze[6]. Hence[7], the use of curtain is considered essential to decent living in society.

Sometimes, however, considerations of social status too have led to the recognition of certain things as necessities. When a substantial number of people in society use certain things which were treated with indifference before or regarded as luxuries, it becomes necessary for others to use them to maintain their status in society. Men today are too conscious of their position in society, and to assert their social influence whenever it is possible, they gain possession of certain things such as telephones or refrigerators, which they had earlier regarded as luxuries.

Thus, most of the necessities of today are actually not necessities in the sense that they are indispensable for survival, but that they are required to add to the comforts of life and our social position, and there is no doubt that many more of the luxuries of today will come to be regarded as necessities tomorrow.

NEW WORDS

1. acquisition [,ækwi'ziʃn] (n) *sự giành được, sự đạt được*
2. sustenance ['sʌstinəns] (n) *thức ăn thức uống; phương tiện sinh sống*
3. part and parcel of [pɑ:t ənd 'pɑ:s(ə)l əv] *một phần (không thể thiếu) của*
4. at one's disposal [dis'pouzəl] *tùy ý sử dụng*
5. tend [tend] (v) *có khuynh hướng, hay*
6. gaze [geiz] (n) *cái nhìn chằm chằm*
7. hence [hens] (adv) *sau đây, kể từ đây*

85. What contributions can studies of Economics make to the extension of world trade?

Những nghiên cứu về kinh tế học có thể đóng góp gì vào việc mở rộng nền thương mại thế giới?

One of the main aims of all human activity is the satisfaction of certain basic needs for survival, the most fundamental of which are food and water. Of these, more difficult to obtain is food, for unlike water, it does

not come from the clouds. To obtain it men have to exert all their energies, mental and physical. It is this search for food that has lead to the development of international trade which now extends to all commodities[1], including luxuries.

The idea of world trade is of recent origin, thought merchants[2] of many countries has visited distant lands in search of merchandise even before the thirteenth century. International trade began to expand rapidly only after the Industrial Revolution, when men developed the devices for world communication and realised the necessity for obtaining the products of other countries. With the expansion of world trade, the study of Economics became of much importance to those engaged in international trade and commerce. Today, this subject is taught in all the universities and other institutions of learning throughout the world, for it has come to be realised that the study of Economics could lead to the extension of world trade by revealing new advantages of such trade.

From a study of Economics, together with Geography, it has come to be known that almost every country in the world lacks the geographical and geological[3] conditions for the production of certain commodities. A country in which food can be grown in abundance[4] may not be able to produce manufactured goods, and a country which is rich in mineral deposits and has the skills for the manufacture of goods, may not be able to produce food, owing to the absence of certain geographical advantages. Therefore, each country has realised the benefits of participating in world trade.

Studies of Economics have also revealed the wisdom for each country to concentrate on the production of only certain commodities, even though it has the resources for the production of mâny other goods. Malaysia, for example, could produce mote rice for its people instead of depending on other countries for it; but it is appreciated that it is more advantageous for her to concentrate on the production of other goods such as rubber and tin. In the same way, many of the industrial countries in Europe could produce more food crops; but they too have realised the advantages of importing good and expanding their resources on the manufacture of goods which many of the other countries require.

This tendency on the part of the countries of the world to produce goods in which they have comparative advantages over others has led to the division of labour on an international scale. Each country specialises in the production of certain commodities and imports other commodities

which other countries can produce more skillfully and advantageously. Though such an arrangement sometimes operates to the disadvantage of some countries, especially in times of war when communications is disrupted[5], yet it has been noted that it is still an advantage to maintain this position, for today there are enough means of averting[6] the commercial disadvantages of war which, fortunately, does not occur too frequently. Even a cursory[7] study of Economics would reveal the advantages of participating in world trade, on the part of the various countries of the world. It could therefore be argued that studies of Economics could make a great contribution to the extension of world trade.

NEW WORDS

1. commodity [kə'mɔditi] (n) *hàng hoá; tiện nghi*
2. merchant ['mə:tʃənt] (n) *nhà buôn; thương gia*
3. geological [dʒiə'lɔdʒikəl] (adj) *(thuộc) địa chất*
4. abundance [ə'bʌndəns] (n) *sự phong phú, sự dư dật, sự giàu có*
5. disrupt [dis'rʌpt] (v) *phá vỡ*
6. avert [ə'və:t] (v) *ngăn ngừa, ngăn chặn, tránh*
7. cursory ['kə:səri] (adj) *vội, nhanh, lướt qua*

86. Journalism

Nghề báo chí

Almost every one who can read and write sometimes feels the urge to write on some favourite topic; but some people love writing so much that they devote most of their leisure to the writing of something on a wide variety of subjects for the sheer[1] pleasure of writing. Such people usually become skillful writers, and if the ability to write with ease and facility were enough to achieve success in the field of journalism, many people would make journalism their career.

In countries like England and Japan, where there are hundreds of newspapers and journals and a wide readership, journalism is an attractive profession. It is a source of prodigious[2] income to many. In Malaysia, however, the paucity[3] of journals and newspapers make journalism a precarious career. This does not imply that all those who have made journalism their career in England and Japan or in other countries have achieved success in this profession. There are numerous

instances of failure, and many live a precarious life as journalists, for, to be successful as a journalist, one must have many other qualities, besides the ability to write effectively. One of the important of them is the ability to judge the preferences of the average reader. If one writes for a political journal one should have a fair knowledge of what the readers of that journal expect from it. If one writes for a women's journal, one should know almost instinctively the prejudices and preferences of the readers of that journal. Only then can one prepare one's material for publication to the satisfaction of one's readers. A good journalist must also have a keen sense of responsibility. He should not incite[4] the resentment[5] of his readers. Thus, he may have to distort[6] or omit certain facts and information which in his judgements may appear unpleasant or shocking to his readers.

If, however, the interest of the nation requires that the truth has to be told, however unpleasant it may he, then he must have recourse to skilful employment of words to communicate the information to the people in the most pleasant manner. All this implies that the journalist must not only be well informed about the affairs of the world, but he must also be prepared to exercise his intellectual powers to the utmost and sacrifice all his pleasures and pastimes.

The collection of information and material for publication entails[7] extensive travelling on the part of a journalist, and the physical activity involved in the search for news necessitates the possession of a good health. Besides, the need for contacts with individuals makes it necessary for him to cultivate[8] pleasing habits. Further, he must be prepared to work under the most unpleasant circumstances[9]. For example, if he is working for a popular newspaper, he may have to be at the scene of a battle and risk his life to send reports to his newspaper office. All this does involve great personal sacrifice.

Finally, a good journalist should have a good grasp[10] of the constitutional[11] rights of the citizens of his country and the policies of his government. He should also know the laws of libel[12] and slander[13]. Ignorance of any of these may lead him to make unfair criticisms and disclosures[14] which may cause serious troubles to individuals and the country. Thus, success in journalism is not easy to attain, and only a few individuals make it their career.

NEW WORDS

1. sheer [ʃiə] (adj) *tuyệt đối; hoàn toàn; đúng là*
2. prodigious [prə'didʒəs] (adj) *phi thường, kỳ lạ; to lớn, đồ sộ*
3. paucity ['pɔ:siti] (n) *số ít ỏi, lượng nhỏ; sự khan hiếm, sự thiếu thốn*
4. incite [in'sait] (v) *khuyến khích; kích động, xúi giục*
5. resentment [ri'zentmənt] (n) *sự oán giận*
6. distort [dis'tɔ:t] *làm biến dạng; bóp méo, xuyên tạc*
7. entail [in'teil] (v) *đòi hỏi*
8. cultivate ['kʌltiveit] (v) *trau dồi; tu dưỡng*
9. circumstance ['sə:kəmstəns] (n) *hoàn cảnh, trường hợp, tình huống*
10. grasp [grɑ:sp] (v) *sự nắm được; sự hiểu thấu*
11. constitutional [,kɔnsti'tju:ʃənl] (adj) *(thuộc) hiến pháp, theo hiến pháp, đúng với hiến pháp*
12. libel ['laibəl] (n) *tội phỉ báng; sự phỉ báng*
13. slander ['slɑ:ndə] (n) *sự vu khống, sự vu cáo*
14. disclosure [dis'klouʒə] (n) *sự vạch trần, sự phơi bày*

87. Reply to a friend on his interest in the English language

Hồi âm cho một người bạn về sự quan tâm của anh ta đến tiếng Anh

5, Market Street,

Ipoh.

15th May, 19...

Dear Ali,

Thank you for your delightful[1] letter which came a short while ago.

I am pleased to learn of the new interest you feel in the English language, for it is the first step in your journey to success. No one, in his right senses, can deny[2] that proficiency[3] in English is essential to personal progress and happiness today.

One of the ways of improving your English is to read books on a variety of subjects. If you read books on one or two subjects only, your vocabulary will not expand fast enough. As you might know the English vocabulary consists of more than 600,000 words. Each subject has its own vocabulary. Therefore, the more subjects you read in English and more words you will learn to express yourself with greater ease and satisfaction.

You should also learn the basic rules of Grammar. It is indeed difficult to write English confidently without some knowledge of Grammar. The simplest books on English Grammar are those written by Milon Nandy. They can be found in any book shop. I am sure you have seen many of them.

Please write to me again if you need any help. Though I am not a master of the English language, yet I think I can be of some help to you.

Yours sincerely,

Marvin

NEW WORDS

1. delightful [di'laitful] (adj) *thú vị, thích thú; làm say mê*
2. deny [di'nai] (v) *phủ nhận*
3. proficiency [prə'fiʃnsi] (n) *sự thành thạo*

88. Letter of thanks to a teacher

Thư cảm ơn gửi một giáo viên

Lake View School,
7, Main Road,
Penang.
15th August, 200..

Dear Miss Jane,

As you are aware, I did very well in my last examination. I now wish to thank you for all the good work that you had done for me and for all the others in the class.

You must believe me when I say that we found your lessons very interesting, and your kind words were an added inspiration to us to study hard.

I am sure it was only because of your good work that I and many others in the class did so well in the examination. I shall always remember you with affection, gratitude and respect, as well my friends who passed the examination together with me.

You are indeed a teacher of outstanding calibre[1] and it is a unique privilege[2] to be taught by you.

Yours loving student,
Ruby Nandy

NEW WORDS

1. calibre ['kælibə] (n) *(nghĩa bóng) phẩm chất, tính chất, năng lực*
2. privilege ['privəlidʒ] (n) *đặc quyền, đặc ân*

89. To a station master informing him about the loss of one of your bags during a journey by train.

Gửi cho người trưởng ga để trình báo về sự mất mát một trong những túi xách của bạn trong một chuyến đi bằng xe lửa

70, Hill Road,
Kuala Lumpur.
21st July, 19..

The Station Master,
Kuala Lumpur,

Dear Sir,

This is to inform you about the loss of one of my bags.

On the 19th of this month I boarded the train at Singapore that arrived in Kuala Lumpur at 2.00 a.m.

There were several bags with me and in my haste[1] to get through the gates to catch a taxi upon my arrival in Kuala Lumpur, I left a bag on the train. I discovered the loss of the bag only this morning.

The bag is brown in colour, measuring about 4ft by 2ft and made of leather. My name is printed on the front side of the bag.

Though there is scarcely[2] a chance of finding the bag, unless it has already been handed in, yet I should be obliged[3] if you would do your utmost to find and write to me as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully,
Miss Rosalind Smith

NEW WORDS

1. haste [heist] (n) *sự vội vàng, sự vội vã; sự hấp tấp*
2. scarcely ['skeəsli] (adv) *khó mà, hầu như là không*
3. obliged [ə'blaidʒd] (adj) *biết ơn*

90. To a friend describing a book fair

Gửi cho một người bạn miêu tả về một hội chợ sách

No.3, SS4/134,
Petaling Jaya, Selangor.
21st Sept, 19..

My dear John,

I have something very interesting to tell you; I visited a book fair last week. I shall never forget that visit. I wish you had been there with me.

The fair was held in Sungai Wang, which, as you know, is one of the largest shopping complexes in this part of the world. About twenty publishers and book shops displayed their books There was such an interesting variety off books that I spent several hours at the fair, reading a few pages of a large number of books. To tell you frankly[1], I felt a sudden desire to read all the books that were there. I must admit that I have learnt many new things about human activities in all parts of the world from the many pages that I read.

I also bought some books which were sold at special prices. The special offers attracted large numbers of book-lovers. I wish I had enough money to buy more books.

The fair was open from morning till 10 p.m. and it was really a pleasure to see so many books and people around me all the time.

I really enjoyed the visit to the fair, a visit that has increased my thirst for knowledge. I am sure you would have felt the same, if you had also been there. I shall tell you more about it when wemeet next.

With all good wishes,

Yours sincerely
Mazyki

NEW WORDS

1. frankly ['fræŋkli] (adv) *một cách thẳng thắn, trung thực*

91. Reply to a friend who has written to say how he was saved by a policeman.

Hồi âm cho một người bạn đã viết thư thuật lại việc anh ta đã được một viên cảnh sát cứu sống như thế nào

311, Bright Avenue,

Kuala, Lumpur.

1st July, 19..

Dear Albert,

Your letter which came this morning was indeed very interesting to read..I wonder what had caused the boys to attack you. Perhaps they had mistaken you for somebody else against whom they had a grudge[1].

In any case, it was wise of you to have run away from the crowd. Most people today are afraid to help others in trouble. Otherwise, the two boys would not have dared[2] to harm you in the presence of so many people.

You were also lucky that a policeman was around. This is how God helps the innocent and punishes the guilty. One of the boys who atacked you was caught by the policeman, and you say he was wanted by the police. He is sure to be punished for all his mideeds[3].

However, please be careful for sometime. The boy who escaped might still be looking for you.

Yours sincerely,

Tomby

NEW WORDS

1. grudge [grʌdʒ] (n) *mối hằn thù, bực tức, ác cảm*
2. dare [deə] (v) *đủ can đảm hoặc trơ tráo để làm điều gì; dám*
3. misdeed ['mis'di:d] (n) *hành động xấu; việc làm có hại*

92. To the Principal of a Commercial College asking about a course you are interested in.

Gửi cho Hiệu trưởng một trường Cao đẳng Thương mại để hỏi về một khóa học mà bạn quan tâm

123, Last Avenue,
Kuala Lumpur.
3rd June, 19..

The Principal
Grighton Commercial College,
15, Trunk Road,
Grighton,
England.

Dear Sir,

Aged 20, I have passed the School Certificate Examination of the University of Cambridge and I am now keen[1] to pursue a course in Accountancy at your renowned[2] college.

I should therefore be obliged, if you would let me know whether I am eligible[2] for entry to the course; and if so, how I can get myself admitted and commence my studies without much delay.

I look forward to receiving your reply.

Yours faithfully,
Mary Jones

NEW WORDS

1. keen [ki:n] (adj) *say mê, ham thích*
2. renowned [ri'naund] (adj) *có tiếng, nổi tiếng, lừng danh*
3. eligible ['elidʒəbl] (adj) *đủ tư cách, thích hợp*

93. Reply to a friend who has asked you to join him in his factory where the pay is more

Hồi âm cho một người bạn đã mời bạn cùng làm việc tại nhà máy của anh ta, nơi có mức lương cao hơn

45, Main Road,
Banting,
Selangor.
23rd Feb, 19...

Dear Kim Seng,

Thank you for your letter which I received this morning.

It is indeed kind of you to ask me to join you in your factory where, you say, I could earn more than what I am earning at my present place of work.

Well, Kim Seng, a better pay does not always mean a better job. You see, here I am earning only a few dollars less than what I could earn in your factory. But I do not have to pay house rent or for my meals, which would consume[1] a large part of my income[2] in your factory. Besides, though my present salary is low, there are chances of my earning a very high salary in a few years' time. There might be no such chances in your factory. Finally, I stay with my family and so enjoy comforts which I do not expect to have if I work in your factory.

I must, however, thank you for taking the trouble to write to me and showing an interest in my affairs.

Yours sincerely,
Bhupesh

NEW WORDS

1. consume [kən'sju:m] (v) *tiêu thụ, dùng*
2. income ['iŋkʌm] (n) *thu nhập, lợi tức*

94. To a friend telling him about your new house

Gửi cho một người bạn để kể cho anh ta về căn nhà mới của bạn

256, Jalan Merah,
Seremban
Negeri Sembilan
22nd February, 19...

Dear Milon,

You will have heard that we have moved into a new house.

As you know, the old house was very small and dark and unhealthy, and our part of the town had become so crowded and noisy that it was miserable to liver there.

Our new house is a bungalow[1], standing by itself in a large compound[2]. It is large and roomy, and open on all sides; so we get plenty of fresh air. But it is so quiet, compared with the constant noise in the town. We are all delighted with it. You must come and see it soon.

With love and best wishes,

From your friend,
Anuja

NEW WORDS

1. bungalow ['bʌŋgəlou] (n) *nhà gỗ một tầng*
2. compound ['kɔmpaund] (n) *khu vực có hàng rào vây quanh*

95. To a friend telling him about the trouble the writer had with the police recently

Gửi cho một người bạn để kể cho anh ta về rắc rối với cảnh sát mà người viết gặp phải trong thời gian gần đây

140, Jalan Maxwell,
Seremban,
Negeri Sembilan.
14th February, 19...

Dear Milon,

I am writing to tell you about the trouble I had with the police recently. It was a nasty experience.

I had gone to the town on my bicycle for an afternoon show at the Rex Cinema. As soon as the show was over, it began to rain so heavily that I had to take shelter[1] in a shop.

When the rain stopped at last, it was already dark and I wanted to rush home.

Before I could leave the town, however, two policemen stopped me for riding the bicycle without a front light. I told them that it was because of the rain that I could not reach home before dark; but they would not listen to my pleas[2].

I was then taken to the police station where I had to pay a fine of $20. I was allowed to collect my bicycle from the police station only on the next day.

What a shameful[3] affair it was; I shall never forget it.

Yours sincerely,
Bock Swee

NEW WORDS

1. shelter ['ʃeltə] *ẩn náu, nương tựa*
2. plea [pli:] (n) *lời yêu cầu khẩn thiết; lời cầu xin*
3. shameful ['ʃeimfl] (adj) *đáng hổ thẹn, ô danh, ngượng, xấu hổ*

96. To a friend thanking him for lending some money

Gửi cho một người bạn để cảm ơn anh ta đã cho mượn tiền

5, Jalan Masjid,
Kluang, Johore.
10th July, 19...

My dear Mukri,

Thank you for sending me the <u>Money Order</u>[1] for a hundred dollars and the <u>kind</u>[2] words you have expressed in your letter.

I shall return the money as soon as I am able to do so, and as I said, not later than the middle of next month.

Thank you again for your <u>timely</u>[3] help. I shall never forget your kindness.

Yours sincerely,
Sabri

NEW WORDS:

1. money order ['mʌni 'ɔ:də] *thư chuyển tiền*
2. kind [kaind] (adj) *tử tế, tốt bụng*
3. timely ['taimli] (adj) *đúng lúc; hợp thời*

97. To a friend who has not repaid a loan[1] of money

Gửi cho một người bạn vẫn chưa trả lại một khoản tiền vay

4, Jalan Ipoh,
Kuala Lumpur.
3rd April, 19...

Dear Lim Swee,

It's a long time since I heard from you. I hope you are keeping[2] well.

I am writing to you to ask if you could return the money you borrowed from me almost a year ago. Perhaps you have forgotten about it.

You see, I have a lot of things to do now, and I need every cent I can find. Perhaps you are also in the same position; but you will realise that I have waited to hear from you a long time. You had promised to return the money in a few days' time; but now it's almost a year.

You must, however, believe me when I say that I wouldn't have written to you if I hadn't needed the money so badly.

I therefore hope that you will try to return the money without further[3] delay. Please do not misunderstand[4] me.

Yours sincerely,
Wong Fatt

NEW WORDS

1. loan [ləʊn] (n) *tiền cho vay*
2. keep [ki:p] *vẫn cứ, cứ, vẫn ở tình trạng tiếp tục*
3. further ['fə:ðə] (adj) *thêm nữa, hơn nữa*
4. misunderstand ['misʌndə'stænd] (v) *hiểu lầm, hiểu sai*

98. To a neighbour requesting him to keep his dog from barking and disturbing

Gửi cho một người hàng xóm yêu cầu ông giữ không cho con chó của ông ta sủa và quấy rầy

14, Japan 127,
Kepong Jaya,
Kuala Lumpur.
23rd August, 19...

Dear Mr. Nandy,

Please excuse me for writing to you on a matter which may seem trivial[1] to you. I have, however, given the matter much thought and I now think that I have to mention it to you for the sake[2] of my family.

It is about your dog which has formed a nasty[3] habit of barking the whole day. You can imagine how disturbing it is to have a dog near you barking day in and day out[4]. As you are never at home during the day, you perhaps do not know how much noise your dog makes to disturb all your neighbours.

I should therefore be please if you would do something to stop your dog from disturbing my family so much; so that I may not have to complain to you again.

Yours truly,
(Miss) A.K.Tan

NEW WORDS

1. trivial ['triviəl] (adj) *tầm thường, không đáng kể, ít quan trọng*
2. for the sake of [seik] *vì, vì lợi ích của*
3. nasty ['nɑ:sti] (adj) *xấu, khó chịu, làm bực mình*
4. day in and day out (slang) *ngày nào cũng thế*

99. Thanking someone for a recommendation[1]

Cảm ơn một người về việc tiến cử

4, Peak Venue,
Kuala Lumpur.
5th March, 19...

My dear Amy,

It was indeed very nice of you to recommend my name to your employer for the post of Junior Clerk[2] in your office. I received this piece of news from Julie who came to see me this morning. I have been looking for a job for sometime and it will indeed be a great help to me and my family if I am appointed[3] to the post you have in mind.

Please accept my appreciation for what you have done for me. I am sure I will get the job, as I know how much your employer respects your opinions, advice and recommendations.

Yours very sincerely,
Anita

NEW WORDS

1. recommendation [,rekəmen'deiʃn] (n) *sự giới thiệu; sự tiến cử*
2. Junior Clerk ['dʒu:njə klɑ:k] (n) *thư ký cấp dưới*
3. appoint [ə'pɔint] (v) *cử, bổ nhiệm*

100. To a lady expressing appreciation for her hospitality

Gửi cho một phụ nữ bày tỏ lòng cảm kích về lòng hiếu khách của cô

5, Newcombe Road,
Kuala Lumpur
5th April 19...

Dear Miss Elliot,

I wish to express my appreciation to you for all that you did for me during my short stay in England. I shall not forget the visit to the interesting places, especially the cinemas and the night clubs and the interesting people that I met while you took me round the country. You were indeed hospitable. I wish you could visit my country some day soon so that I could repay your hospitality[1] adequately[2].

Thank you once again for your kindness.

Yours truly,
Linda Tan

NEW WORDS

1. hospitality [,hɔspi'tæliti] (n) *lòng mến khách, lòng hiếu khách*
2. adequately ['ædikwitli] (adv) *tương xứng, thích đáng, thoả đáng*

101. To a doctor thanking him for someone's recovery from a serious illness

Gửi cho một bác sĩ để cảm ơn ông về sự bình phục của ai đó sau cơn bạo bệnh

7, Road 12,
Devlin Square,
Kuala Lumpur,
1st June, 19...

Dear Dr. Edward,

You will be pleased to learn that my father has recovered[1] completely from the serious illness that almost threatened his life a few days ago.

My father's quick recovery from the illness was not due to God's kindness alone but also because of your skill as a doctor and your deep knowledge of medicine.

My family and I are more obliged to you than we can express, and I pray that God may grant[2] you a long life so that you may bring cheer and happiness to the lives of many more of the sick and the distressed[3].

Yours truly,
Tan Kwee Meng

NEW WORDS

1. recover [ri:'kʌvə] (n) *khỏi bệnh, bình phục, lại sức*
2. grant [grɑ:nt] (v) *ban cho, cấp*
3. distressed [dis'trest] (v) *người bị đau đớn*

102. An invitation[1] to a friend

Thư mời gửi cho một người bạn

No. 513,
Oldman Street
Kuala Lumpur
21st August, 19...

Dear Rosemary,

You will be glad to know that my brother who was in England for so many years has just returned after passing his law exam. He will soon be practising as lawyer in this city.

My parents and I are so happy at his return and success that we have decided to give a party to all our friends. The party will be held on the 5th of next month at our home at 6 o'clock in the evening.

I am therefore writing to you to ask you to attend the party. I am sure we will enjoy being together for a few hours on that day.

Please write to me to say that you will be coming.

Yours sincerely,
Marina

NEW WORDS

1. invitation [,invi'teiʃn] (n) *sự mời, lời mời; giấy mời*

103. To a friend inviting her to attend a wedding

Gửi cho một người bạn mời cô ấy tham dự một đám cưới

No. 72, Jalan Baru,
Malacca.
3rd April, 19...

Dear Kamariah,

You will be glad, I am sure, to know that my sister, Swee Lan, is getting married on the 10th of this month. The groom[1] is a well known doctor in this town. We are all very proud[2] of him. My sister is indeed a very lucky girl.

However, my parents have invited a lot of people to attend the wedding, and they have asked me to invite all my friends as well. I shall therefore be glad if you will also attend to wedding. It will be a very grand wedding, I can assure[3] you.

Please come in the morning, so that we can have a lot of fun together.

Your loving friend,
Swee Moi

NEW WORDS

1. groom [grum] (n) *chú rể*
2. proud [praud] (n) *tự hào, hãnh diện*
3. assure [ə'ʃuə, ə'ʃɔ:] (v) *quả quyết, cam đoan; đảm bảo*

104. Declining[1] an invitation to a wedding

Từ chối một lời mời đến dự đám cưới

15, Jalan Multan,
Muar, Johor,
6th April, 19...

Dear Swee Moi,

Thank you for asking me to attend your sister's wedding on the 10th of this month. Your sister is indeed very lucky, and I am sure that the wedding will be an event to remember. I would certainly like to attend such a wedding, but as you know, my mother is still very ill and I have to be near by to attend to her needs.

You must therefore excuse me from attending the party. I shall try to meet your levely sister and the new member of your family, your brother-in-law[2], as soon as I am able to do so.

Your loving friend,
Kamariah

NEW WORDS

1. decline [di'klain](v) *từ chối, khước từ*
2. brother-in-law ['brʌðərinlɔ:] *anh rể*

105. Informing a mother about someone's success

Báo cho mẹ biết về thành công của mình

15, New Trees Road,

Kuala Lumpur.

23rd June, 19...

Dear Mother,

I have great news for you: I have passed the final examination of my school with very high marks[1]. I obtained[2] eighty marks in all the subjects.

My teachers say that I should do very well in the next examination, if I continue to study hard. I am very pleased with this remark of my teachers. I am sure you and father will be very happy and proud, if I do well in the next and most important examination.

I shall come home soon. I hope everyone is keeping well at home. Please give my love to father and the little ones.

With love and regards to you.

From your loving daughter,

Norisha

NEW WORDS

1. mark [ma:k] (n) *điểm*
2. obtain [əb'tein] (v) *đạt được, giành được, thu được*

106. From a son to a mother who has sent a gift to celebrate his success in his examination

Của một người con trai gửi cho mẹ, người đã gửi một món quà để chúc mừng thành công của anh ta trong kỳ thi

105 Market Street,
Singapore
20th October 19...

My dear Mother,

Thank you very much for the gift you have sent me to celebrate my success in my last examination. It is such an expensive and beautiful thing that is seems like a dream come true. I had never expected such a gift. In any case, I am sure I would not have done so well in my examination if father and you have not given me the encouragement and inspiration to study hard and to believe in the importance of knowledge and wisdom. I shall certainly treasure your gift, realising how proud father and you are of me.

I shall come home soon.

With love to you and father,

Your affectionate[1] son,
Esmond

NEW WORDS

1. affectionate [ə'fekʃnit] (adj) *thương yêu; trìu mến*

107. To a business firm asking about a job

Gửi cho một công ty thương mại để xin việc

5, Asia Avenue,
Kuala Lumpur,
10th September, 19...

The Manager,
New Products Ltd.,
5, Nelson Street,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

Having left school a few months ago, I am looking for some work to support[1] myself and to build up a career for myself.

I am a Chinese of eighteen years of age. I have obtained passes in five subjects in the G.C.E. examination, including English and Mathematics. While in school, I played football, badminton[2] and other games and was a very active member in the debating[3] society.

Though I have no experience in any kind of office work, I am prepared to work hard and acquire some experience in some profession.

I should therefore be grateful to you if you would let me know if you could offer me any work in your office, suitable for my qualifications.

Yours faithfully,
Gilbert Soo

NEW WORDS

1. support [sə'pɔ:t] (v) *nuôi nấng, cấp dưỡng*
2. badminton ['bædmintən] (n) *cầu lông*
3. debate [di'beit] (n) *tranh luận, thảo luận*

108. Reply to an advertisement for a Junior Clerk

Phúc đáp cho một quảng cáo tìm một thư ký

205, Norris Road,
Singapore,
20th October 19...

The Manager,
Brixton Enterprise,
8, Clive Street,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

I wish to apply for the post of Junior Clerk, advertised in the "Daily Press" today.

I am nineteen years old and have just passed the School Certificate Examination of the University of Cambridge. I have also taken a course in Typewriting and Book-Keeping.

I enclose copies of some of my testimonials[1], and refer you to the Principal of Grammar School, 10, Queen Street, Kuala Lumpur, for my character.

If I am given the post, I can assure you that I will do my best to give you satisfaction.

Yours faithfully,
Belinda Lee

NEW WORDS

1. testimonial [,testi'mounjəl] (n) *giấy chứng nhận*

109. To the Editor of a Newspaper about the dirty roads in your locality

Gửi cho Tổng Biên Tập của một tờ báo phản ánh về những con đường dơ bẩn ở địa phương của bạn

14, Jalan 127,
Jaya Puri,
Telok Intan,
Perak
15th May, 19...

The Editor
New Asia Press,
15, New Lane,
Kuala Lumpur.

Sir,

As a resident of Telok Intan, I wish to draw the attention of the proper authorities[1] to the dirty roads of this town.

No one seems to bother about the dirt that is spreading from the roads toy all the corners of the town. If no action is taken to remove the dirt immediately, there will soon be an epidemic[2] of various diseases.

I hope the authorities will act immediately to prevent the spread of disease and death that may result from the negligence[3] of the authorities in this regard.

Yours sincerely,

Richard Tan

NEW WORDS

1. authority [ɔ:'θɔriti] (n) *nhà chức trách, người có thẩm quyền*
2. epidemic [,epi'demik] (n) *bệnh dịch*
3. negligence ['neglidʒəns] (n) *tính cẩu thả, tắc trách; điều sơ suất*

110. To a Post Master about a change of address

Gửi cho người Quản lý Bưu điện về việc thay đổi địa chỉ

7, Green Avenue,
Eastern Park,
Kuala Lumpur.
10th May, 19...

The Post Master,
Southern Park,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

Please note that I am no longer residing at 10, Queen's Avenue, Southern Park. I should therefore be obliged if you would forward all my letters to my present address.

Yours faithfully,
Adeline Hubert

111. For the post of Assistant Secretary in a commercial firm

Cho vị trí một trợ lý thư ký trong một hãng thương mại

Address

Date

The Manager,

Bolton Industries,

10th New Park Avenue,

Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

In response[1] to your advertisement in the "Daily Mail" for an Assistant Secretary, I beg to apply for the post.

I am twenty-five years of age and I obtained passes in the G.C.E. Examination in the following subjects

1. English 'O' level.
2. Mathematics 'O' level.
3. Geography 'O' level.
4. Economics 'O' level.
5. English Law 'A' level.

After passing the G.C.E. Examination, I enrolled[2] myself in a Commercial School where I passed in Typewriting, Book-Keeping, Commercial Correspondence and Shorthand at the Advanced Stage of the I.C.C.I. Examination.

Though I have no experience, I am confident that the knowledge that I have acquired in commercial subjects will enable me to carry out my duties to your satisfaction, if you appoint me to the post.

I should therefore be obliged if you would grant me an interview on any date convenient to you.

Yours faithfully,

Margaret Smith

NEW WORDS

1. response [ri'spɔns] (n) *sự trả lời; sự hưởng ứng*
2. enrol [in'rəʊl] (v) *ghi danh; kết nạp*

112. For the post of Shorthand Typist

Cho vị trí nhân viên đánh máy tốc ký

10, Sims Avenue,
Singapore.
1st November, 19...

The Manager,
Allen and Edward Co. Ltd.,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

With reference to your advertisement in today's "Daily Herald", I should like to be considered for the position of Shorthand[1] Typist.

I am twenty years of age, and I have just completed a secretarial course at City College of Commerce. I was educated at Grammar School, where I passed my G.C.E with three 'A' levels and two 'A' levels.

My shorthand speed is one hundred and my typing speed is forty. I should be available to attend an interview at any time which is convenient for you.

Yours faithfully,
Victoria Jonathan

NEW WORDS

1. shorthand ['ʃɔ:thænd] (adj) *dùng tốc ký, ghi bằng tốc ký*

113. An application for the post of junior clerk

Một thư xin việc cho vị trí một thư ký cấp dưới

23, Main Road,
Mandai,
Singapore.
3rd June, 19...

The Manager,
South-East Traders,
25-A, Serangoon Road,
Singapore.

Dear Sir,

In answer to your advertisement in the New Straits Times, I wish to apply for the post of junior clerk in your office.

I have passed the Primary 6 examination and am at the moment looking for work to help my poor parents. In my school I took prizes in English and Arithmetic[1], and was considered a good scholar, as the certificate of my Headmaster which I enclose, shows.

I am young and active and willing to work hard. I can assure you that, if I am selected[2] for the post, I shall do my best to give satisfaction.

I enclose copies of my testimonials.

Yours faithfully,
Samir Nandy

NEW WORDS

1. arithmetic [ə'riθmətik] (n) *số học*
2. select [si'lekt] (v) *lựa chọn, tuyển chọn*

114. To a company, from a girl who has been compelled to leave school and look for work

Gửi cho một công ty, thư của một cô gái buộc phải nghỉ học để tìm việc làm

10, Onan Road
Singapore
1st November, 19...

The Manager,
New Asia Enterprise Ltd.,
13, Kingsway Street,
Singapore.

Dear Sir,

Having just left school, I am looking for work to help my aged parents to provide for our family of ten members. Since yours is a big firm, I am writing to you in the knowledge that you will always have a vacancy[1] for a girl like me.

I am seventeen years old and have learned only up to Form IV, as the financial difficulties of my parents would not allow me to proceed[2] further, though my performance[3] in school was considered quite good by my teachers.

I am willing to do any kind of work that you are prepared to offer me, for it will not only afford me an opportunity to reduce the burden[4] of my parents but also to pursue my studies in an evening school and be of greater service to you and to my family in due course. My concern for my family will certainly increase my occupational efficiency.

I am therefore confident that you will consider my plight[5] sympathetically and offer me a post as soon as possible. I assure you that I will do my best to give you satisfaction.

Yours faithfully,
Judith Duncan

NEW WORDS

1. vacancy ['veikənsi] (n) *một vị trí hay chức vụ còn bỏ trống*
2. proceed [prə'si:d] (v) *tiến lên; đi đến*
3. performance [pə'fɔ:məns] (n) *thành tích*
4. burden ['bə:dn] (n) *gánh nặng*
5. plight [plait] (n) *hoàn cảnh khó khăn, cảnh ngộ khốn khổ, tuyệt vọng*

115. For a post of Salesman in a large firm

Cho một vị trí nhân viên bán hàng trong một công ty lớn

Address

Date

The Manager,

Eurasia Enterprises Ltd.,

5, Green Street, Singapore.

Dear Sir,

As I am deeply interested in the career of salesmanship[1], I write to you in the hope that you will be able to employ me in your renowned[2] firm.

Aged eighteen, I have just left school after obtaining 'O' level passes in English, Mathematics, Geography, History and Economics in the G.C.E. Examination of the Cambridge University.

While in school, I played football and badminton and was an active member of the Literary and Debating Society. I was also on the Editorial Board of my school magazine. I took part in many inter-school debates and won prizes and certificates for my oratorical[3] skill.

As I am aware that a salesman in your firm has enough scope[4] for his abilities of self-expression and for earning power, I am earnest in my desire to offer my services to you. I am prepared to travel extensively to promote your products.

I therefore sincerely hope that you will give due consideration to my application and let me know your decision at your earliest convenience.

Yours faithfully,

Kenneth Brown

'NEW WORDS

1. salesmanship ['seilzmənʃip] (n) *nghề bán hàng; nghệ thuật bán hàng*
2. renowned [ri'naund] (adj) *có tiếng, nổi tiếng, lừng danh*
3. oratorical [,ɔrə'tɔrikəl] (adj) *(thuộc) diễn thuyết, (thuộc) tài hùng biện*
4. scope [skəʊp] (n) *cơ hội, dịp, lối thoát; nơi phát huy*

116. Imagine that you are a father. Your son was ill for a few days and was unable to go to school. Write a letter to the principal of the school in which your son is learning

Tưởng tượng rằng bạn là một người cha. Con trai của bạn đã bị bệnh vài ngày nay và không thể đi học. Hãy viết một lá thư gửi thầy hiệu trưởng của trường mà con trai bạn đang học.

155, Park Circus,
Kuala Lumpur.
22nd January, 19...

The Principal,
Cambridge English School,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

This is to inform[1] you that my son, Joseph, of Form 2A, was unable to attend school for a few days last week, owing to an illness that confined him to bed.

I should therefore be pleased if you would excuse his absence[2] from school during that period.

Yours faithfully,
J.S. Williamson

NEW WORDS

1. inform [in'fɔ:m] (v) *báo tin, báo cho biết*
2. absence ['æbsəns] (n) *sự vắng mặt*

117. To an airways company asking about flights and fares

Gửi cho một hãng hàng không để hỏi về các chuyến bay và giá vé

15, Nelson Street,
Malacca.
5th August, 19...

The Manager,
Eurasia Airways,
Queen Street,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

As I wish to make a trip to Japan sometime next month, I should be obliged[1] if you would let me know the flight schedule[2] to Japan and the lowest fare that you could allow me, should I decide to travel by your planes.

Yours faithfully,
K.J. Smith

NEW WORDS

1. obliged [ə'blaidʒd] (adj) *biết ơn*
2. schedule ['ʃedʒu:l; 'skedʒul] (n) *lịch, kế hoạch*

118. Imagine that you are a clerk in an office. Write a letter to your employer telling him why you were unable to report for work for a few days

Tưởng tượng rằng bạn là thư ký của một văn phòng. Hãy viết một lá thư gửi người quản lý của bạn cho biết tại sao bạn không có mặt tại nơi làm việc trong vài ngày qua

G.S. Smith & Co. Ltd.,
6, Main Street,
Singapore.
5th July, 19...

The Manager,
GS. Smith & Co. Ltd.,
6, Main Road,
Singapore.

Dear Sir,

I regret[1] very much that I was unable to report for work for three days last week owing to an illness that kept me confined to bed.

I attach the medical certificate issued by the doctor who attended me, for your inspection[2].

I should therefore be obliged if you would excuse my absence during the period in question.

Yours faithfully,
George Teo

NEW WORDS

1. regret [ri'gret] (v) *lấy làm tiếc*
2. inspection [in'spekʃn] (n) *sự xem xét; sự giám định*

119. Imagine that you are an employee in a business firm. Your son is very ill in America. Write to your employer asking for leave of absence for a month

Hãy tưởng tượng rằng bạn là nhân viên của một hãng kinh doanh. Con trai của bạn đang bị bệnh nặng ở Mỹ. Hãy viết thư cho người quản lý xin nghỉ phép trong vòng một tháng

713, New Henom Street,
Kuala Lumpur.
3rd April, 19...

The Manager,
Eurasia Books,
Kuala Lumpur.

Dear Sir,

I regret very much having to inform you that my son is seriously ill in America. I have just received a telegram from the the principal of his school asking me to visit my son immediately before his condition grows worse.

I should therefore esteem[1] it a greaf favour if you would grant me a month's leave of absence so that I may have sufficient time to do all that is necessary for my son's complete recovery from the illness. I shall return to duty after the expiry[2] of my leave.

I have every confidence that you will approve the leave that I seek, without delay, in view of the seriousness of the matter.

Yours faithfully,
Albert Lee

NEW WORDS

1. esteem [is'ti:m] (n) *coi là, cho là; kính mến, quý trọng*
2. expiry [iks'paiəri] (n) *sự mãn hạn; sự kết thúc*

120. To a publisher enquiring[1] about some books

Gửi cho một nhà xuất bản để tìm hiểu về một vài quyển sách

4, Green Lane,
Kuala Lumpur,
4th July, 19...

The Manager,
Eurasia Books,
29, St. Thomas Road,
Kuala Lumpur,
Malaysia.

Dear Sir,

Reference the books entitled[2] "Milon's Mastering English Course" and "Correct Your English" by Milon Nandy, which you have advertised in the major newspapers, I should be pleased if you would let me know what other books the same author has written on the English language.

I like the simple style in which his books are written and I am very keen to buy all his books on the English Language.

Please also let me know the price of each book and the discount[3] that you give to your customers.

An early reply will be greatly appreciated.

Yours faithfully,
Kenneth Leo

NEW WORDS

1. enquire [in'kwaiə] (v) *hỏi thăm, tìm hiểu*
2. entitle [in'taitl] (v) *đặt tựa, có tên (sách...)*
3. discount ['diskaunt] (n) *phần tiền được giảm; tiền bớt; tiền trừ*

121. To the Chief Medical Officer of a hospital, expressing your appreciation for the good treatment you received as a patient

Gửi cho Bác sĩ trưởng của một bệnh viện, bày tỏ lòng cảm kích của bạn đối với sự điều trị tận tình mà bạn đã nhận được khi là bệnh nhân

20, Weld Avenue,
Kuala Lumpur,
3rd July, 19...

The Chief Medical Officer,
General Hospital,
Kuala Lumpur,

Dear Sir,

This is to express my appreciation[1] to you and to all the other members of your staff for the excellent treatment[2] I received as a patient in your hospital last month.

I would like to make special mention of the kindness that all those who were assigned[3] to look after me showed towards me and the efficient manner in which they carried out their duties under your administration.

I am confident that there are many others who are as grateful[4] as I am to you and your staff and it is only because of their lack of words to give adequate[5] expression to their gratitude that is restraining[5] them from writing to you.

I commend you on your excellent service.

Yours truly,
Belinda Wong

NEW WORDS

1. appreciation [ə,pri:ʃi'eiʃn] (n) *sự cảm kích*
2. treatment ['tri:tmənt] (n) *sự điều trị; sự đối xử*
3. assign [ə'sain] (v) *phân công*
4. grateful ['greitful] (adj) *biết ơn*
5. adequate ['ædikwit] (adj) *xứng đáng; đầy đủ*
6. restrain [ri'strein] (v) *ngăn trở; cản trở*

122. Imagine that you have to pay Income Tax. Write a letter to the Income Tax Department requesting time to pay your tax

Hãy tưởng tượng rằng bạn phải đóng thuế thu nhập. Hãy viết một bức thư gửi Phòng Thuế Thu nhập đề nghị cho thêm thời gian để đóng thuế

7, Sunrise Hill,
Kuala Lumpur.
3rd July, 19...

The Controller of Income Tax,
Kuala Lumpur,
Malaysia.

Dear Sir,

Reference to your letter dated 25th June, 1987 in which you state that I have to pay $500 for the year 1986, I wish to request you to allow me to pay the amount by five instalments[1], that is $100 a month, as it will be a great strain on my financial resources to pay the tax[2] in one sum.

I should therefore esteem it a great favour if you would give a prompt[3] and favourable reply.

Yours faithfully,
R.K. Bardhan

NEW WORDS

1. instalment [in'stɔ:lmənt] (n) *phần trả mỗi lần (của một số tiền)*
2. tax [tæks] (n) *thuế*
3. prompt [prɔmpt] (adj) *nhanh chóng*

123. To your landlord[1], asking him to repair the roof which is leaking

Gửi cho chủ nhà mà bạn đang thuê, yêu cầu ông ta sửa chữa mái nhà đang bị dột

210/45, Newton Lane,

Singapore.

25th December, 19...

Dear Sir,

Will you please send your workmen as early as possible to repair the roof of my bungalow, which is leaking[2] badly? In last night's rain a lot of water got in and damaged the drawing-room and one of the bedrooms. Please treat this as urgent[3].

Yours truly,

M.R. Nandy

NEW WORDS

1. **landlord** ['lændlɔ:d] (n) *chủ nhà (nhà cho thuê)*
2. **leak** [li:k] (v) *bị dột; bị rò rỉ*
3. **urgent** ['ə:dʒənt] (adj) *cấp bách, khẩn cấp; gấp*

124. Reply to the manager of a business firm who has sent you the last reminder for payment of a bill for goods supplied to you

Phúc đáp cho giám đốc của một hãng thương mại đã gửi cho bạn thư nhắc nhở cuối cùng về việc thanh toán một hóa đơn hàng hóa đã cung cấp cho bạn

28, Howard Avenue,
Kuala Lumpur,
5th May, 19...

The Manager,
Asia Lights Co. Ltd.,
17, Dutch Lane,
Kuala Lumpur

Dear Sir,

I refer to your letter dated 1st May, 19..., bearing[1] the words "Last Reminder" and threatening legal action if I ignore[2] it. I am indeed very sorry that I have delayed payment of the bill; but I can assure you that the delay was not intentional[2].

However, I now send you a cheque for the amount owing to you. Please forgive the inconvenience that I have caused you.

Yours faithfully,
R.L. Roye

NEW WORDS

1. bear [beə] (v) *mang, đề (chữ)*
2. ignore [ig'nɔ:] (v) *phớt lờ; không để ý đến*
3. intentional [in'tenʃənl] (adj) *cố ý, có chủ tâm*

125. To a dentist asking for an appointment

Gửi một nha sĩ đề nghị một cuộc hẹn khám

205, Kirbau Road.
Singapore
15th October, 19...

Dear Sir,

My teeth are in a very bad state, and I think I had better have them taken out. I shall be glad, therefore, if you will fix[1] a day and hour when I could consult[2] you. It will be convenient for me to come any afternoon this week after 3 p.m. I should appreciate an early reply.

Yours faithfully,
Judith Joseph

NEW WORDS

1. fix [fiks] (v) *bố trí, thu xếp, sắp xếp*
2. consult [kən'sʌlt] (v) *hỏi ý kiến; tham khảo*

126. Reply to a dealer of goods who has threatened to take legal action against you for your having failed to pay what you owe him

Phúc đáp cho một người bán hàng đã đe dọa sẽ khởi tố bạn vì bạn đã không trả được số tiền mà bạn nợ ông ta

15, Beach Road,
Singapore.
21st May, 19...

The Manager,
New Star Co.
4, Parkinson Street,
Singapore.

Dear Sir,

I have just received your letter informing me about your intention to institute legal proceedings[1] against me to recover the money that I owe you.

I would like to take this opportunity to thank you for the kindness that you have shown towards me for the last several months, restraining yourself from taking any legal action against me.

You must, however, believe me when I say that it was for some compelling[2] reasons that I was not able to settle[3] my debt to you for such a long time.

Now that you have expressed your intention to resort to the law to recover what I owe you, however, I request you earnestly[4] to allow me a month's time to pay the debt. I can assure you that you will find no cause to write such a letter to me again, if you can accede[5] to my request.

Please reply as soon as you can.

Yours faithfully,
Edward Tan

NEW WORDS

1. institute legal proceedings (against) *khởi kiện*
2. compelling [kəm'peliŋ] (adj) *bắt buộc, thúc ép*
3. settle ['setl] (v) *giải quyết, dàn xếp*
4. earnestly ['ə:nistli] (adv) *một cách nghiêm túc, nghiêm chỉnh*
5. accede [ək'si:d] (v) *đồng ý; tán thành*

127. GETTING TO KNOW SOMEONE

Bắt đầu tìm hiểu một người

(Mr. John and Mr. George are walking in opposite directions, early one morning. They strike up an acquaintance[1] when they come face to face. Mr. John begins the conversations).

Mr. John Hello.

Mr. George Hello.

Mr. John It's a fine morning, isn't it?

Mr. George It is indeed. This is the time of day I like the most. The air is fresh and cool.

Mr. John And invigorating[2] too, I must add.

Mr. George Yes, very true.

Mr. John By the way, may I introduce myself? I'm John.

Mr. George And I'm George. I'm so pleased to meet you.

Mr. John And so am I. (They shake hands).

Mr. George I see you passing this way every morning. Now that we've come to know each other, might I ask you a few questions?

Mr. John Certainly. I shall be only too glad to answer your questions, if they aren't too personal of course.

Mr. George They certainly aren't. I shouldn't take such liberties[3] at our first meeting, should I?

Mr. John Please don't take it amiss[4]. I mean no offence[5].

Mr. George I'm sure of that. Anyway, Mr. John, may I know why you pass this way every morning?

Mr. John	Well, my place of work is only a short distance from here. I walk to my office this way, and the fresh air, to use your word, invigorates me. I pass through this place again after work everyday. Walking to and from my office gives me good exercise.
Mr. George	I must agree with you. Walking is indeed good exercise. How far is your house from here?
Mr. John	It's close by. You can see if from here. That's my house over there. (He points to the house). Now, may I ask why you yourself visit this place every morning?
Mr. George	That's because I have my morning walks at this place. It has long been my habit to have a short walk every morning, a habit I formed after my retirement[6] from the army.
Mr. John	That's indeed a good habit. And, as you yourself said earlier, a good exercise too. It keeps you strong, healthy and fit.
Mr. George	I'm glad we both agree on that.
Mr. John	Well, Mr. George, you must excuse me. I mustn't be late for work. We'll continue our discussion some other day.
Mr. George	Certainly. We'll meet again. Goodbye.
Mr. John	Goodbye. (*They part with a hand-shake*).

NEW WORDS

1. strike up acquaintance [straik ʌp ə'kweintəns] *làm quen với ai*
2. invigorating [in'vigəreitiŋ] (adj) *làm cường tráng, tiếp sinh lực; làm thêm hăng hái*
3. liberties ['libətiz] (pl.n) *thái độ sỗ sàng*
4. take amiss [teik ə'mis] (v) *bực mình, phật ý*
5. offence [ə'fens] (n) *sự xúc phạm*
6. retirement [ri'taiəmənt] (n) *sự nghỉ việc*

128. LOOKING FOR A JOB

Tìm việc làm

(Miss Julie is looking for work. She enters an office. The receptionist sees her).

Receptionist Yes, can I help you in any way?

Miss Julie Thank you. I'm looking for work. Do you have any vacancies[1]?

Receptionist I'm sorry I don't know. But I'll find out. Can you write down your full name, please. (*She gives Miss Julie a piece of paper*).

Miss Julie Here you are. (*She gives the piece of paper back with her name on it*).

Receptionist Thank you. Please take your seat. I'll be right hack. (*She goes to see the Manager*).

Manager Yes, anything important?

Receptionist A young lady of the name of Julie is looking for work. Would you like to see her?

Manager Is she personable[2]?

Receptionist She is, I must say.

Manager Please send her in.

Receptionist Very well, sir. (*She leaves. Then she talks to Miss Julie*).

Receptionist Miss Julie, you may see the Manager. He's in that room. (*She points to the room*).

Miss Julie Thank you very much. You're very kind. (*She goes to see the Manager*).

Manager Please sit down, Miss Julie.

Miss.Julie Thank, you

Manager I'm told that you're looking for work.

Miss Julie Yes, sir.

Manager Will you tell me about your qualifications and experience?

Miss Julie I've passed the G.C.E. Examination and L.C.C.I. Examinations. Would you like to see my certificates[3]?

Manager	Yes, please.
Miss Julie	Here you're. (*She hands over the certificates to the Manager, who* *inspects*[4] *them*).
Manager	They're very good, I must admit.
Miss Julie	Thank you.
Manager	Do you have any experience?
Miss Julie	I'm sorry, I haven't any. I've just finished my studies.
Manager	What work can you do, Miss Julie?
Miss Julie	Typing, accounting and any other clerical[5] duties.
Manager	What salary do you expect?
Miss Julie	$250 for a start, sir.
Manager	You can join us. We'll pay you $300 for a start. Miss Julie, when can you report for work?
Miss Julie	Thank you very much, sir, for giving me the job. I can report for work any time you tell me, sir.
Manager	In that case, please report for work tomorrow.
Miss Julie	I'll do so. Thank you again, sir. (*She leaves*).

NEW WORDS

1. vacancy ['veikənsi] (n) *một vị trí hay chức vụ còn bỏ trống; chỗ khuyết*
2. personable [pə:'sənəbl] (adj) *xinh đẹp, duyên dáng, dễ coi*
3. certificate [sə'tifikit] (n) *giấy chứng nhận; chứng chỉ; văn bằng*
4. inspect [in'spekt] (v) *xem xét tỉ mỉ, kiểm tra*
5. clerical ['klerikəl] (adj) *(thuộc) công việc biên chép, (thuộc) văn phòng*

129. LOOKING FOR SOMEONE IN A LARGE BANK

Tìm gặp một người trong một ngân hàng lớn

(Mrs. Linda enters a bank to meet an officer. The receptionist sees her).

Receptionist	Can I be of service to you.
Mrs Linda	Yes, thank you. I wish to meet Mr. Carrington.
Receptionist	I'm not sure if I've heard this name before. Do you know which section[1] he is in?
Mrs Linda	I'm sorry, I don't. But you ought to have some idea, as the receptionist of this bank.
Receptionist	You must pardon me. This is one of the largest banks in the city. There are more than five hundred employees in it. Is it possible to remember the names of all of them and the department[2] or sections in which they work.
Mrs Linda	I'm sorry; I didn't intend to be rude.
Receptionist	May I know your name, please? (*She asks politely*).
Mrs Linda	I'm Mrs. Linda.
Receptionist	Please take your seat, Mrs Linda. I'll find out in which department or section Mr Carrington works.
Mrs Linda	Thank you. You're very kind. (*The receptionist makes a few enquiries*[3]*. Then she calls Mrs. Linda*).
Receptionist	Mrs Linda.
Mrs Linda	Yes. (*She gets up from her seat and walks towards the receptionist*).
Receptionist	I know now where Mr Carrington is. He's in Loan's Department.
Mrs Linda	Can I see him?
Receptionist	Yes. I've informed him of your presence. He's expecting you.
Mrs Linda	Thank you. How do I go to his office?
Receptionist	Go right to the end. The last room is Mr. Carrington's. (*She points to the room*).
Mrs Linda	Thank you, with pleasure.

Receptionist Not at all.

NEW WORDS

1. section ['sekʃn] (n) *bộ phận (công tác)*
2. department [di'pɑ:tmənt] (n) *phòng ban*
3. enquiry [in'kwaiəri] (n) *tìm hiểu*

130. AN INTERVIEW FOR THE POST OF SECRETARY

Một cuộc phỏng vấn cho vị trí thư ký

(Miss Jane comes for an interview with the manager of a firm. She has applied for the post[1] of Secretary. She enters the manager's room).

Miss Jane Good morning.

Manager Good morning. Please take your seat and feel relaxed.

Miss Jane Thank you.

Manager I'm James, the manager of this firm. I've seen all your documents, Miss Jane. I must admit that they're very impressive. Yet, I have to ask you a few questions to get to know you a little, personally.

Miss Jane Of course. It's only proper[2] that you should have a personal interview with your prospective employees. I shall be only too pleased to answer your questions.

Manager Thank you. Please answer my questions honestly and freely.

Miss Jane I will, sir.

Manager Have you any idea what you'll be expected to do, if you are appointed to the post in question?

Miss Jane Only vaguely[3], sir. The advertisement didn't refer to the nature[4] of the work involved. I can only guess from the work a secretary normally does.

Manager Well, as the secretary of this firm, you'll be concerned with almost all aspects[5] of the adminstration of this firm. Do you think you can carry out your duties confidently and efficiently? You seem to have no experience at all.

Miss Jane It's true, sir; I have no experience as a secretary. But I'd consider my inexperience an advantage.

Manager That's interesting to hear. Will you <u>elaborate</u>[6] that statement?

Miss Jane Gladly, Sir. It's my view that people with experience hardly accept new ideas and changes readily. They stick to their old methods almost religiously. But in the business world today, many changes are taking place very rapidly. As a result, office <u>procedure</u>[7] and the nature of the work of a secretary area also changing rapidly. The introduction of computer and other machines too has altered the work of a secretary to a great extent.

Manager Very interesting. Please continue.

Miss Jane Being young and inexperienced, I shall learn modern methods of managing an office as a Secretary. Besides, as a youth, I can learn fast, whatever the nature of the work. I'm prepared to learn everything that will make me an ideal secretary by modern standards. I shall ignore methods considered out-of-date.

Manager I must say that you have very interesting views, Miss Jane. You seem confident that you can work to our satisfaction.

Miss Jane I might make a few mistakes <u>initially</u>[8] and perhaps, at times, even cause you some <u>irritation</u>[9]; but I'm sure that I can learn to do my work efficiently within a few days, with your help and patience, if you employ me as your secretary.

Manager You strike me as a person who is filled with self-confidence and <u>determination</u>[10], <u>traits</u>[11] I admire most.

Miss Jane Perhaps it's because I'm young and keen to take up a career; but I must assure you that I'm not trying to impress you favourably.

Manager I've no doubt about your sincerity. However, do you think you can report for work any time, if we call you within this month.

Miss Jane I can't be certain about that, sir, as I expect some offers from a few other firms soon. But, may I know a little about the terms you offer?

Manager Of course. If you're appointed, you'll be paid $700 initially, for a period of three months. After that, your salary will be raised to $1000. You'll also enjoy free medical benefits and be paid a housing allowance of $150. Are such terms acceptable to you?

Miss Jane Yes. Having no experience, this is the best offer I can expect. What I need most is an oppotunity to prove myself. I am confident that you'll not regret it, if you appoint me to the post.

Manager We'll write to you as soon as we can. Thank you for answering our advertisement.

Miss Jane Thank you, sir. It has been a real pleasure talking with you in such an informal atmosphere. I shall be expecting to hear from you. Goodbye. (She gets up from her seat).

Manager Goodbye. (*Miss Jane leaves the room*).

NEW WORDS

1. post [pəʊst] (n) *vị trí công tác; chức vụ; nhiệm vụ*
2. proper ['prɔpə] (adj) *đúng; thích đáng; thích hợp*
3. vaguely ['veigli] (adv) *một cách mơ hồ*
4. nature ['neitʃə] (n) *bản chất*
5. aspect ['æspekt] (n) *khía cạnh; mặt*
6. elaborate [i'læbərit] (v) *cho biết thêm chi tiết; giải thích tỉ mỉ*
7. procedure [prə'si:dʒə] (n) *thủ tục*
8. initially [i'niʃəli] (adv) *vào lúc đầu, ban đầu*
9. irritation [,iri'teiʃn] (n) *sự làm phát cáu, sự chọc tức*
10. determination [di,tə:mi'neiʃn] (n) *tính quả quyết; quyết tâm*
11. trait [trei;(Mỹ) treit] (n) *nét tiêu biểu; đặc điểm*

131. A STUBBORN SALESMAN

Một người bán hàng bướng bỉnh

(A Salesman visits Mr Roy's house one evening. He tries his utmost[1] to sell product to Mr Roy).

Mr Roy Yes, what can I do for you?

Salesman I'm from a firm that deals in vacuum cleaners[2]. I'm sure you already have a vacuum cleaner; but the one we have is a new

brand, very much better than all those which have been in the market so long. And, we are prepared to pay a reasonable price for your machine, whatever the brand, if you decide to buy ours in exchange. May I have a little of your attention to discuss it in detail?

Mr Roy I'm sorry, I can't oblige you. The machine I have, still gives me good service. I don't intend to replace it for a while yet.

Salesman May I know what brand it is?

Mr Roy Whatever the brand, I'm satisfied with it and its performance.

Salesman But if you'll listen to me, sir, for just a few minutes, you'll be convinced that our machine is superior[3] to the one you have, in all respects.

Mr Roy But I don't wish to waste my money on things I don't need immediately.

Salesman Few people are prepared to do that; but sometimes we do spend money to buy things which we do not need immediately, especially when we feel that they're cheap or that we may need them in the future, don't we?

Mr Roy But, in this case, I'm convinced that I'll never need another vacuum cleaner for a very long time.

Salesman What if your present machine goes out of order?

Mr Roy I'll have it repaired.

Salesman If it becomes irreparable[4]?

Mr Roy I'll do without it, as I did before such machine were available[5].

Salesman But can you do without such a machine, after having used one for so long?

Mr Roy I think you're becoming too personal now. Your attitude does not incline[6] me to answer any more of your questions:

Salesman I'm sorry if I have offended you, sir; but I must assure you that it was not intentional.

Mr Roy Please leave now. I've a lot of work to do. Besides, my decision is final. I'm not buying anything from you.

Salesman But, sir, aren't you curious to know what I actually have to offer you? Can you listen to me just to satisfy your curiosity.

Mr Roy	No, I've no time for that. And for your information, I have no curiousty about such machines. You must leave now. Please don't overstay[7] your welcome.
Salesman	All right, sir, if that's what you wish. But here's my visiting card. Please contact me if you ever change your mind. (*He gives his card*).
Mr Roy	That's a remote possibility; but I'll keep your card, if you insist.
Salesman	Goodbye.
Mr Roy	Goodbye.

NEW WORDS

1. one's utmost ['ʌtməʊst] (n) *gắng hết sức*
2. vacuum cleaner ['vækjuəm'kli:nə] (n) *máy hút bụi*
3. superior [su:'piəriə] (adj) *cao cấp hơn*
4. irreparable [i'repərəbl] (adj) *không thể đền bù lại được; không thể sửa lại được*
5. available [ə'veiləbl] (adj) *sẵn có để dùng, sẵn sàng để dùng, có thể dùng được*
6. incline [in'klain] (v) *khiến cho sẵn sàng, khiến cho có ý thiên về*
7. overstay [,əʊvə'stei] (v) *ở quá lâu, lưu lại quá lâu, ở quá hạn*

132. MEETING THE MANAGER OF THE FIRM

Gặp gỡ giám đốc của hãng

Receptionist	May I help you?
Salesman	Yes, I would like to meet the Manager of this firm.
Receptionist	Do you have an appointment?
Receptionist	I'm sorry, I haven't.
Receptionist	May I have your name please.
Salesman	I'm Mathews. This is my visiting card. (He gives the card to the receptionist).
Receptionist	Please take your seat. I'll inform the manager. (*She goes to see the Manager and hands over*[1] *the visiting card to him. The Manager sees the card*).

Manager	Please show him in.
Receptionist	All right, sir. (*She leaves and meets Mr Mathews*). You may see the Manager, Mr Mathews. He's in that room.
Salesman	Thank you very much. (*Salesman goes to see the Manager*).
Manager	What can I do for you, Mr Mathews?
Salesman	As you can see from my card, sir, I represent a firm that deals in a special brand of typewriter. If you could spare me a little of your time, I would like to explain to you the advantages of having such a typewriter in your office. I know you're a very busy man, and I hate to intrude[2] upon your time; but I'm sure you'll not find it a waste of time, listening to me.
Manager	I'm prepared to listen to you. Please take your seat, Mr Mathews.
Salesman	Thank you..
Manager	Now, let me see your brochures[3].
Salesman	Here you're, sir. (*He hands over the brochures to the Manager. The Manager looks at them with interest*).
Manager	I must admit that I haven't seen such a typewriter before.
Salesman	This is the best brand of typewriter in the world today.
Manager	You don't have to explain any further. As I can see, everything is given in the brochures. We'll buy one for the moment. You can bring it tomorrow.
Salesman	Thank you, sir. You've been very kind.
Manager	Not at all.
Salesman	I'll bring the machine tomorrow at about 10 o'clock.
Manager	Please do so.
Salesman	Goodbye. (*Salesman gets up from his seat*).
Manager	Goodbye. (*Salesman leaves*).

NEW WORDS

1. hand over [hænd 'ouvə] (v) *trao cho*

2. intrude [in'tru:d] (v) *xâm phạm, xâm nhập; vào bừa; không mời mà đến*

3. brochure ['brəʊʃə] (n) *sách mỏng hoặc sách nhỏ thông tin hoặc quảng cáo về cái gì*

133. VISITING A DOCTOR

Đến phòng mạch

(Mr Rubin is in a doctor's room).

Doctor Please sit down, Mr Rubin.

Mr Rubin Thank you.

Doctor May I know your complaints[1]?

Mr Rubin I fell intermittent[2] pains in various parts of the body. I also breathe hard, every time I exert a little.

Doctor Please unbutton your shirt. Let me check your heart condition. (Mr Rubin unbuttons his shirt. Then the doctor checks Mr Rubin's heart-beat with his stethoscope[3]).

Mr Rubin How's my heart condition, Doctor?

Doctor There's nothing wrong with your heart condition. It's perfect I should say. Please give me your hand. (*Mr Rubin does as told. The doctor feels Mr Rubin's pulse[4]. He begins to talk to Mr Rubin after a short pause.*) There's nothing to worry about. You have a strong pulse. Now, please lie on that couch[5]. (*He points to the couch in his room. Mr Rubin lies on the couch. The doctor begins to talk again.*) I'll press on various parts of your body with my fingers. Please tell me whenever you feel any pain.

Mr Rubin All right Doctor. (*The doctor exerts pressure on various parts of Mr Rubin's body with his fingers. Mr Rubin suddenly screams.*) It hurts here.

Doctor I'm sorry. And here? (*Putting pressure on another part.*)

Mr Rubin No. (*The doctor continues to press on all parts of M Rubin's body.*)

Doctor And here?

Mr. Rubin Yes, a little

Doctor And here?

Mr. Rubin Yes, a little again

Doctor You can get out of the couch Mr. Rubin

Mr Rubin Thank you. (*He gets out of the couch and resumes*[6] *seat*)

Doctor I think you need a lot of physical exercise, Mr. Rubin. Does you work involve any physical activity?

Mr Rubin No, Doctor. As a clerk, my work is mainly sedentary[7].

Doctor That accounts for the pains you feel. Regular exercise may end those pains. It may also improve your breathing.

Mr. Rubin I'm inclined to agree with you, Doctor. I'll begin to have a little exercise every day from tomorrow.

Doctor Please don't over do it when you begin. I'll give you some medicines which will prove beneficial[8] to you.

Mr. Rubin Thank you, Doctor.

Doctor Not at all. (*Mr. Rubin leaves the doctor's room*)

NEW WORDS

1. complaint [kəm'pleint] (n) *căn bệnh; chứng bệnh; sự than phiền*
2. intermittent [,intə'mitənt] (adj) *liên tiếp ngừng rồi lại bắt đầu; không liên tục, gián đoạn*
3. stethoscope ['steθəskəʊp] (n) *ống nghe (để khám bệnh)*
4. pulse [pʌls] (n) *mạch*
5. couch [kautʃ] (n) *ghế trường kỷ; đi văng*
6. resume [ri'zju:m] (v) *lại tiếp tục*
7. sedentary ['sedntri] (adj) *làm việc tĩnh tại, ở một chỗ; ít đi lại*
8. beneficial [,beni'fiʃəl] (adj) *có ích; có lợi*

134. THE READING HABIT

Thói quen đọc sách

(Mr. Berry has a talk with Miss Kent on the reading habit).

Mr. Berry I'm told, Miss Kent, that you read a great deal. And, I take the liberty of saying that many of your friends call you a bibliophile[1], a book-lover. May I know why you love books so

much, and the benefits you have derived[2] from your reading habit?

Miss Kent Well, to begin with, I wasn't aware of what my friends were thinking of me; but I'm indeed honoured to be known as a bibliophile. (*They laugh together*).

Mr. Berry A very special respectable nickname indeed, if I may say so. I wish had earned that sobriquet[3].

Miss Kent Now, let me tell you why I love books so much. It's mainly because of the language in which books are written. Briefly, I love the language used in books. It fascinates[4] me. It brings me closer to all humanity and increases my love for the human race. I see the beauty of simple words, and expressions that come from the human heart and mind. They, in turn[5], reflect the beauty and power of the human mind which is capable[6] of any thought. Besides, the more I read, the more I realise the depth of my ignorance of words and the human mind, God's greatest gift to man. The language used to express human thoughts and ideas, and the human mind, in many books, is indeed exquisite[7].

Mr Berry Aren't you interested in the subject matter a book deals with?

Miss Kent Yes, I'm interested in it, but to a lesser degree.

Mr Berry Would you explain why?

Miss Kent Well, when I was a student the subject matter of any book I read was more important than the language in which it was written, because I had to pass in that subject in some examination. Now, having completed my studies, I feel I need a greater power of verbal expression than knowledge of subjects which are not related to my work. As you know, command of language is very essential to success in life. And, I must say at this point I have derived a number of benefits from my reading habit, facility[8] of expression being the main.

Mr Berry I must agree with you. Command of language is indeed very important to a person who associates[9] with all kinds of people and is involved in all kinds of work. To be frank[10], I often find myself at a loss for words in many situations.

Miss Kent You must excuse me now. I've an appointment to keep. Do pardon me if I seem rude.

Mr Berry Sure, Miss Kent. I must thank you for giving me the opportunity to talk to you.

NEW WORDS

1. bibliophile ['biblioufail] (n) *người ham sách*
2. derive [di'raiv] (v) *nhận được từ, thu được từ*
3. sobriquet ['səʊbrikei] (n) *biệt hiệu*
4. fascinate ['fæsineit] (v) *quyến rũ*
5. in turn (adv) *tuần tự*
6. capable ['keipəbl] (adj) *có khả năng*
7. exquisite ['ekskwizit] (adj) *thâm thúy*
8. facility [fə'siliti] (n) *điều kiện dễ dàng*
9. associate [ə'səʊʃiit] (v) *kết giao, kết bạn với, giao thiệp với*
10. frank [fræŋk] (adj) *thẳng thắn, thật thà*

135. AN UNEXPECTED SITUATION

Một tình cảnh không mong đợi

(Mr John finds himself in an awkward situation. He accounts[1] a stranger for help).

Mr John Excuse me.

Stranger Yes.

Mr John May I have your attention, please

Stranger Yes. What's the matter?

Mr John I'm in an awkward[2] position. You may not believe me. My pocket has been picked. I've lost all my money and I can't pay for the journey back home. Could you help me, please?

Stranger I do believe you. Pickpockets are very active in this city. By the way, where's your home?

Mr John In Singapore.

Stranger In Singapore! And this is Kuala Lumpur, almost 500 kilometres away. I can understand your plight now. Perhaps I can help you. How much money do you need?

Mr John About thirty dollars. I can pledge my ring or my watch to you, if you can spare me the money.

Stranger You don't have to pledge anything. I'll see how much I can spare. (*He looks into his wallet*).

Mr John I'm genuinely[3] sorry to put you to so much inconvenience.

Stranger Don't worry about that, please. I might find myself in the same position some day.

Mr John You're indeed very considerate.

Stranger And you're very fortunate. I can spare you more that you've asked for. You can have fifty dollars. Here you are. (*He gives the money to Mr John*).

Mr John But thirty dollars should be enough. I don't need more than that.

Stranger That doesn't matter. Please keep the fifty dollars. You may need it on the way for incidental[4] expenses.

Mr John Thank you very much. By the way, I must offer you an apology. In my desperation[5], I didn't ask your name.

Stranger I'm Rashid bin Ahmad.

Mr John And I'm John. (*They shake hands. Mr John continues*) Your generosity[6], Mr Rashid, has touched[7] me deeply. I'll never forget this sincere act of kindness. You're a true ambassador of your country. Please let me have your address. I'll return your money as soon as I'm back home.

Mr Rashid No, please don't return it. I'll look you up when I'm in Singapore sometime next month. And I too would appreciate[8] if you'd let me have your address.
Mr John Certainly. (*The two give their addresses to each other*).

Mr Rashid You must excuse me now, Mr John. I have to be home in an hour's time.

Mr John Surely. I thank you again for your kindness and generosity. Do visit me when you're in Singapore.

Mr Rashid I will, certainly. This is an encounter I can't forget. Something must be done to get rid of[9] the pickpockets in this city.

Mr John May I repeat that I'm greatly indebted to you for your timely help.

Mr Rashid It's all right. (*They shake hands and part*).

NEW WORDS

1. account for [ə'kaʊnt fə] (v) *giải thích*
2. awkward ['ɔ:kwəd] (adj) *khó xử; lúng túng, vụng về*
3. genuinely ['dʒenjuinli] (adv) *thành thật; chân thật*
4. incidental [,insi'dentl] (adj) *đột xuất; tình cờ, bất ngờ*
5. desperation [,despə'reiʃn] (n) *sự tuyệt vọng*
6. generosity [,dʒenə'rɔsiti] (n) *sự rộng lượng, hào phóng*
7. touch [tʌtʃ] (v) *gây xúc động*
8. appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit] (v) *cảm kích*
9. to get rid of (v) *tống khứ, bài trừ*

MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI VÀ BÀI LUẬN MẪU TRONG CÁC KỲ THI TOEFL VÀ IELTS

****

In a TOEFL test, the Writing section measures your ability to compose in standard written English on an assigned topic. Your task in this section is to generate and organize ideas and to support them with examples and evidence.

SCORING GUIDE

Readers will assign scores based on the following scoring guide. Though examinees are asked to write on a specific topic, parts of the topic may be treated by implication. Readers should focus on what the examinee does well.

Scores

6 Demonstrates clear competence in writing on both the rhetorical and syntactic levels, though it may have occasional errors.

A paper in this category

- effectively addresses the writing task
- is well organized and well developed
- uses clearly appropriate details to support a thesis or illustrate ideas
- displays consistent facility in the use of language
- demonstrates syntactic variety and appropriate word choice

5 Demonstrates competence in writing on both the rhetorical and syntactic levels, though it will probably have occasional errors.

A paper in this category

- may address some parts of the task more effectively than others
- is generally well organized and developed
- uses details to support a thesis or illustrate an idea
- displays facility in the use of language
- demonstrates some syntactic variety and range of vocabulary

4 Demonstrates minimal competence in writing on both the rhetorical and syntactic levels.

A paper in this category

- addresses the writing topic adequately but may slight parts of the task
- is adequately organized and developed
- uses some details to support a thesis or illustrate an idea
- demonstrates adequate but possibly inconsistent facility with syntax and usage
- may contain some errors that occasionally obscure meaning

3 Demonstrates some developing competence in writing, but it remains flawed on either the rhetorical or syntactic level, or both.

A paper in this category may reveal one or more of the following weaknesses:

- inadequate organization or development
- inappropriate or insufficient details to support or illustrate generalizations
- a noticeably inappropriate choice of words or word forms
- an accumulation of errors in sentence structure and/or usage

2 Suggests incompetence in writing.

A paper in this category is seriously flawed by one or more of the following weaknesses:

- serious disorganization or underdevelopment
- little or no detail, or irrelevant specifics
- serious and frequent errors in sentence structure or usage
- serious problems with focus

1 Demonstrates incompetence in writing.

A paper in this category

- may be incoherent
- may be undeveloped
- may contain severe and persistent writing errors

Papers that reject the assignment or fail to address the question must be given to the Table Leader. Papers that exhibit absolutely no response at all must also be given to the Table Leader.

Here are some sample topics and model essays.

❖ **Topic:** *Some people believe that a college or university education should be available to all students. Others believe that higher education should be available only to good students. Discuss these views. Which view do you agree with? Explain why.*

An important goal of education is to learn about yourself. Once you are separated from your parents, you are on your own. You are forced to deal with all different kinds of people and issues. You make an investment in yourself and in your future.

I can understand why some people would think that a college o university education should be available only to good students. Higher education is very expensive. It might seem like a waste of money to send someone to college who might not be able to handle the course work. Higher education is also a big investment of time. Maybe it would make more sense for a mediocre student to use that time getting a job and starting to earn money. Also, there are trade schools for students who are not academically inclined. Here they can learn a trade and a way to earn living. Why should they go to college or university? Besides, if they go to college and fail, this will discourage them and make them feel inferior.

I don't agree with this position. I think a college or university education should be available to all students. I think every student shout have the opportunity to at least try his hand at college classes. Yes, higher education is expensive, but it is worth it. Yes, higher education is a big investment of time, but it is a valuable investment. If a student finds out he or she can't handle the work, there's plenty of time after that to go to trade school or find a job. Failing at college; or university might be hard on a student's self-image, but learning how to handle failure is one of the hard lessons of life.

I think every student should be given a chance to see how far she can go. Students who were at mediocre grades in secondary school might do very well in a different environment. College is more than just going to class. It's a time to meet different people, separate from parents, begin to

define yourself as a person. I think that's an experience every student should have.

❖ **Topic:** *People attend college or university for many different reasons (for example, new experiences, career preparation, increased knowledge). Why do you think people attend college or university? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.*

People attend colleges or universities for a lot of different reasons. I believe that the three most common reasons are to prepare for a career, to have new experiences, and to increase their knowledge of themselves and the world around them.

Career preparation is becoming more and more important to young people. For many, preparing for a career in a competitive job market is the primary reason to go to college. At college, it's possible to learn new skill for careers with a lot of opportunities. This means careers, such as information technology, that are expected to need a large workforce in the coming years.

Also students go to colleges and universities to have new experiences. This often means having the opportunity to meet people different from those in their home towns. For most students, going to college is the first time they're been away from home by themselves. Being independent like this means having to make decisions that they've never had to make before. Making these decisions increases their knowledge of themselves.

Besides looking for self-knowledge, people also attend a university or college to expand their knowledge in subjects they find interesting. For many, this will be their last chance for a long time to learn about something that doesn't have to do with their career.

I would recommend that people not be so focused on a career. They should go to college to have new experiences and learn as much as they can about themselves and the world they live in.

❖ **Topic:** *Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Parents are the best teachers. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.*

Throughout my life, I have been lucky enough to have a very good relationship with my parents. They have supported me, given me necessary criticism, and taught me a greet deal about how to live my life.

Parents can be very important teachers in our lives; however, they are not always the best teachers.

Parents may he too close to their children emotionally. Sometimes they can only see their children through the eyes of a protector. For example, they may limit a child's freedom in the name of safety. A teacher might see a trip to a big city as a valuable new experience. However, it might seem too dangerous to a parent.

Another problem is that parents may expect their children's interests to be similar to their own. They can't seem to separate from their children in their mind. If they love science, they may try to force their child to love science too. But what if their child's true love is art, or writing, or car repair?

Parents are usually eager to pass on their values to their children. But should children always believe what their parents do? Maybe different generations need different ways of thinking. When children are young, they believe that their parents are always right. But when they get older, they realize there are other views. Sometimes parents, especially older ones, can't keep up with rapid social or technological changes. A student who has friends of all different races and backgrounds at school may find that his parents have narrower views. A student who loves computers may find that her parents don't really understand or value the digital revolution. Sometimes kids have to find their own ways to what they believe in.

The most important thing to realize is that we all have many teachers in our lives. Our parents teach us, our teachers teach us, and our peers teach us. Books and newspapers and television also teach us. All of them are valuable.

❖ **Topic:** *Nowadays, food has become easier to prepare. Has this change improved the way people live? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.*

The twentieth century has brought with it many advances. With those advances, human lives have changed dramatically. In some ways life is worse, but mostly it is better. Changes in food preparation methods, for example, have improved our lives greatly.

The convenience of preparing food today is amazing. Even stoves have become too slow for us. Microwave cooking is much easier. We

can press a few buttons and a meal is completely cooked in just a short time. People used to spend hours preparing an oven cooked meal, and now they can use that time for other, better things. Plus, there are all kinds of portable, prepackaged foods we can buy. Heat them in the office microwave, and lunch at work is quick and easy.

Food preparation today allows for more variety. With refrigerators and freezers, we can preserve a lot of different foods in our homes. Since technology makes cooking so much faster, people are willing to make several dishes for even a small meal. Parents are more likely to let children be picky, now that they can easily heat up some prepackaged macaroni and cheese on the side. Needless to say, adults living in the same house may have very different eating habits as well. If they don't want to cook a lot of different dishes, it's common now to eat out at restaurants several times a week.

Healthful eating is also easier than ever now. When people cook, they can use new fat substitutes and cooking sprays to cut fat and calories. This reduces the risk of heart disease and high cholesterol. Additionally, we can buy fruits and vegetables fresh, frozen or canned. They're easy to prepare, so many of us eat more of those nutritious items daily. A hundred years ago, you couldn't imagine the process of taking some frozen fruit and ice from the freezer, adding some low fat yogurt from a plastic cup and some juice from a can in the refrigerator, and whipping up a low fat smoothie in the blender.

Our lifestyle is fast, but people still like good food. What new food preparation technology has given us is more choices. Today, we can prepare food that is more convenient, healthier, and of greater variety than ever before in history.

❖ **Topic:** *It has been said, "Not everything that is learned is contained in books" and contrast knowledge gained from experience with knowledge gained from books. In your opinion, which source is more important? Why?*

"Experience is the best teacher" is an old cliché, but I agree with it. The most important, and sometimes the hardest, lessons we learn in life come from our participation in situations. You can't learn everything from a book.

Of course, learning from books in a formal educational setting is also valuable. It's in school that we learn the information we need to function in our society. We learn how to speak and write and understand mathematical equations. This is all information that we need to live in our communities and earn a living.

Nevertheless, I think that the most important lessons can't be taught; they have to be experienced. No one can teach us how to get along with others or how to have self-respect. As we grow from children into teenagers, no one can teach us how to deal with peer pressure. As we leave adolescence behind and enter adult life, no one can teach us how to fall in love and get married.

This shouldn't stop us from looking for guidelines along the way. Teachers and parents are valuable sources of advice when we're young. As we enter into new stages in our lives, the advice we receive from them is very helpful because they have already had similar experiences. But experiencing our own triumphs and disasters is really the only way to learn how to deal with life.

❖ **Topic:** *A company has announced that it wishes to build a large factory near your community. Discuss the advantages, and disadvantages of this new influence on your community. Do you support or oppose the factory? Explain your position.*

New factories often bring many good things to a community, such as jobs and increased prosperity. However; in my opinion, the benefits of having a factory are outweighed by the risks. That is why I oppose the plan to build a factory near my community.

I believe that this city would be harmed by a large factory. In particular, a factory would destroy the quality of the air and water in town. Factories bring smog and pollution. In the long run, the environment will be hurt and people's health will be affected. Having a factory is not worth that risk.

Of course, more jobs will be created by the factory. Our population will grow. To accommodate more workers, more homes and stores will be needed. Do we really want this much growth, so fast? Your town is going to grow, I would prefer slow grow with good planning. I don't want to see rows of cheaply constructed townhouses. Our quality of life must be considered.

I believe that this growth will change our city too much. I love my hometown because it is a safe, small town. It is also easy to travel here. If we must expand to hold new citizens, the small-town feel will be gone. I would miss that greatly.

A factory would be helpful in some ways. However, I feel that the dangers are greater than the benefits. I cannot support a plan to build a factory here, and hope that others feel the same way.

❖ **Topic:** *If you could change one important thing about your hometown, what would you change? Use reasons and specific examples to support your answer.*

If I could change one thing about my hometown, I think it would be the fact that there's no sense of community here. People don't feel connected, they don't look out for each other, and they don't get to know their neighbors.

People come and go a lot here. They change jobs frequently and move on. This means that they don't put down roots in the community. They don't join community organizations, and they're not willing to get involved in trying to improve the quality of life. If someone has a petition to put in a new street light, she has a very hard time getting a lot of people to sign. They don't feel it has anything to do with them. They don't get involved in improving the schools because they don't think the quality of education is important to their lives. They don't see the connection between themselves and the rest of their community.

People don't try to support others around them. They don't keep a friendly eye on their children, or check in on older folks if they don't see them for a few days. They're not aware when people around them may be going through a hard time. For example; they may not know if a neighbor loses a loved one. There's not a lot of community support for individuals.

Neighbors don't get to know each other. Again, this is because people come and go within a few years. So when neighbors go on vacation, no one is keeping an eye on their house. No one is making sure nothing suspicious is going on there, like lights in the middle of the night. When neighbors' children are cutting across someone's lawn on their bikes, there's no friendly way of casually mentioning the problem. People immediately act as if it's a major property disagreement.

My hometown is a nice place to live in many ways, but it would be much nicer if we had that sense of community.

❖ **Topic:** *How do movies or television influence people's behavior? Use reasons and specific examples to support your answer.*

Do movies and television affect our behavior? A special concern is whether movies and television make children and society more violent. I believe that movies and television do influence our behavior, both for the better and for the worse.

Movies do make people more violent. The more we see violent acts on television, the less sensitive we become to them. Eventually violence doesn't seem wrong. We may even commit violent acts ourselves. This is especially true because we don't always realize that violence has consequences. Actors can be killed and come back for another movie. Sometimes we confuse that with reality. We forget that killing someone is permanent.

Movies and television also influence our behavior because they make us less active. Looking at films is a passive activity. If we watch too much, we become unhealthy, both mentally and physically. We stop using our own imagination when we see things acted out for us. Mental laziness becomes physical laziness; we'd rather watch sports on TV than play sports ourselves. We'd rather visit with the characters on "Seinfeld" or "Friends" than go chat with our own neighbors. Imaginary people have exciting lives. Is it any wonder that some people would rather live a fantasy life than their own?

Of course, watching movies and television can also be good for us. It can give us a broader window on the world. For example, seeing movies can expose us to people of different races and cultures. We can then overcome some prejudices more easily. Recently there have been more handicapped people in films, and this also helps reduce prejudice.

The best influence on our behavior is that movies and television reduce stress. Watching films, we can escape our own problems for a little while. Also, sometime movies show positive ways to resolve problems we all face. While TV and movies shouldn't be a way to hide from life, sometimes they can help us cope.

It is true that movies and television can influence our behavior negatively. However, I also believe that they influence our behavior in

positive ways. How they affect you depends on how much you watch, what you watch, and how you respond to what you watch.

❖ **Topic:** *Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? "Television has destroyed communication among friends and family". Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.*

Some people believe that television has destroyed communication among friends and family. I think this is an exaggeration. In my opinion, whether or not television burns communication depends on what type of program is being viewed. More importantly, it depends on the type of viewer.

There are empty programs and educational programs. Empty programs do not challenge people. They have just enough storyline to keep them from switching channels. There are also passive and active viewers. A passive viewer will just watch television without thinking about what he or she is seeing. The combination of an empty program and a passive viewer makes communication unlikely. Passive viewers just continue to watch, actually enjoying the fact that they don't have to think. They won't break away to talk about programming with friends and family. Even with better programming, passive viewers still won't think or communicate much. They'll probably even prefer the empty programs because the better programming is too much work.

On the other hand, active viewers watching educational programming always want to share what they see with friends and family. "Educational" doesn't necessarily mean documentaries on PBS. They could be dramas with realistic relationships or action shows with clever plotlines. When active viewers watch programs, they have ideas and talk about them with others. Good programming inspires them to change their thinking and their lives. Unlike passive viewers, they don't want to watch more and more without thinking.

Television may destroy communication among passive viewers. Those viewers probably don't want to communicate with friends and family much anyway. For active viewers who already enjoy communicating, television is actually helpful!

❖ **Topic:** *Some people prefer to live in a small town. Others prefer to live in a big city. Which place would you prefer to live in? Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.*

I grew up in a small town and then moved to a big city, so I have experienced the good and bad sides of both. I never thought that I would like living in a big city, but I was wrong. After ten years of living in one, I can't imagine ever living in a small town again.

Small towns and big cities both have some problems in terms of transportation.

In a small town, you have to own a car to ensure a comfortable living. You can't get around without one because there isn't any kind of public transportation. Big cities generally have heavy traffic and expensive parking, but there you have a choice of taking public transportation. It's not free, but it's often cheaper than driving when you consider gas and time. Especially if you don't have a car, you're better off in the city.

I love the excitement of big cities. Small towns have a slow pace. Large cities mean you have to adapt to a variety of situations, like finding a new route to work or trying a new restaurant. I enjoy that challenge very much. Another part of the excitement of city living is the variety of cultural activities available. There is a wide assortment of theatre, music and dance performances available in big cities. These things are rare in small ones.

The final thing I like about large cities is the diversity of the people. The United States is made up of people of different races, religions, abilities, and interests. However, you seldom find such a variety of people in a smaller town. I think that living in an area where everyone was just like me would quickly become boring.

Of course, security is a concern, and that's one area where small towns are superior to big cities. Still, I would rather be a bit more cautious and live in a large city than to feel secure but bored.

❖ **Topic:** *"When people succeed, it is because of hard work. Luck has nothing to do with success." Do you agree or disagree with the quotation above? Use specific reasons and examples to explain your position.*

When people succeed, it is because of hard work, but luck has a lot to do with it, too. Success without some luck is almost impossible. The French emperor Napoleon said of one of his generals, "I know he's good. But is he lucky?" Napoleon knew that all the hard work and talent in the world can't make up for bad luck. However, hard work can invite good luck.

When it comes to success, luck can mean being in the right place to meet someone, or having the right skills to get a job done. It might mean turning down an offer and then having a better offer come along. Nothing can replace hard work, but working hard also means you're preparing yourself for opportunity. Opportunity very often depends on luck.

How many of the great inventions and discoveries came about through a lucky mistake or a lucky chance? One of the biggest lucky mistakes in history is Columbus' so-called discovery of America. He enriched his sponsors and changed history, but he was really looking for India. However, Columbus' chance discovery wasn't pure luck.

It was backed up by years of studying and calculating. He worked hard to prove his theory that the world was round.

Success that comes from pure luck and no hard work can be a real problem. For example, consider a teenage girl who becomes a movie star. Imagine she's been picked from nowhere because of her looks. She is going to feel very insecure, because she knows she didn't do anything to earn her stardom. On the other hand, think about an actress who's spent years learning and working at her craft. When she finally has good luck and becomes a success, she will handle stardom better. She knows she earned it.

People who work hard help make their own luck by being ready when opportunity knocks. When it comes to success, I think that hard work and luck go hand in hand.

❖ **Topic:** *Some people prefer to eat at food stands or restaurants. Other people prefer to prepare and eat food at home. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons anti examples to support your answer.*

Some people like to eat out at food stands and restaurants, while others like to prepare food at home. Often it depends on the kind of lifestyle people have. Those with very busy jobs outside the house don't always have time to cook. They like the convenience of eating out. Overall, though, it is cheaper and healthier to eat at home.

While eating in restaurants is fast, the money you spend can add up. When I have dinner at a restaurant with a friend, the bill is usually over twenty dollars. I can buy a lot of groceries with that much money. Even lunch at a fast food stand usually costs five or six dollars for one person. That's enough to feed the whole family at home.

Eating at home is better for you, too. Meals at restaurants are often high in fat and calories, and they serve big plates of food – much more food than you need to eat at one meal. If you cook food at home, you have more control over the ingredients. You can use margarine instead of butter or your potatoes, or not put so much cheese on top of your pizza. At home you can control your portion size. You can serve yourself as little as you want. In a restaurant, you may eat a full plate of food "because you paid for it".

It's true that eating out is convenient. You don't have to shop, or cook, or clean up. But real home cooking doesn't have to take up a lot of time. There are lots of simple meals that don't take long to make. In fact, they're faster than eating out, especially if you think of the time you spend driving to a restaurant, parking, waiting for a table, waiting for service, and driving home.

Both eating at restaurants and cooking at home can be satisfying. Both can taste good and be enjoyed with family and friends. I prefer cooking at home because of the money and health issues, but people will make the choice that fits their lifestyle best.

❖ **Topic:** *Some people believe that university students should be required to attend classes. Others believe that going to classes should be optional for students. Which point of view do you agree with? Use specific reasons and details to explain your answer.*

Some people may believe that going to classes should be optional, but I disagree. I don't understand how university students can expect to learn anything if they don't attend classes. Personal experience can help people learn about themselves and the world outside the classroom, but when it comes to learning about academic subjects, students need to be in class.

In class they receive the benefit of the teacher's knowledge. The best teachers do more than just go over the material in the class textbook. They draw their students into discussion of the material. They present opposing points of view. They schedule guest speakers to come, give the students additional information, or show documentary films on the subject.

Also, attending classes on any subject teaches more than just facts. It teaches students how to learn, how to absorb information and then apply what they've learned to other situations. Their teacher is the best one to help them with these skills. They can't learn them just by reading the textbook.

Going to class also teaches students how to work with the other members of the class. Many times students will be given group assignments. This is different from what they did in secondary school. Here they are with people from different backgrounds and experiences. In this situation, they learn how to handle working with people different from themselves to achieve a common goal.

Going to class also teaches students responsibility and discipline. Having to be at a particular place at a particular time prepares them for getting a job. Being at that place on time with an assignment completed prepares them for a career.

In short, by going to class students learn more than just information from the teacher. They also learn how to learn, how to work with others, and how to work responsibly. These are not optional skills in life, so attending classes should not be optional in college.

In an IELTS test, there are two writing tasks and it is suggested that candidates spend about 20 minutes on Task 1, which requires them to write at least 150 words and 40 minutes on Task 2 - 250 words. The assessment of Task 2 carries more weight in marking than Task 1.

In Task 1, candidates are asked to look at a diagram or table and to present the information in their own words. They are assessed on their ability to organise, present and possibly compare data, describe the stages of a process, describe an object or event, explain how something works.

In Task 2 candidates are presented with a point of view, argument or problem. They are assessed on their ability to present a solution to the problem, present and justify an opinion, compare and contrast evidence and opinions, evaluate and challenge ideas, evidence or arguments. Candidates are also judged on their ability to write in an appropriate style.

Here are some sample tasks.

TEST 1

WRITING TASK I

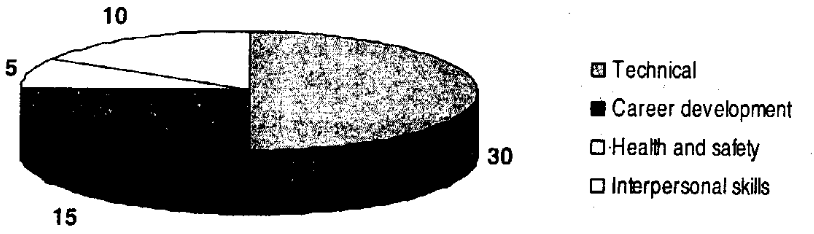
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph and pie chart below give information on in-house training courses in a large financial company.

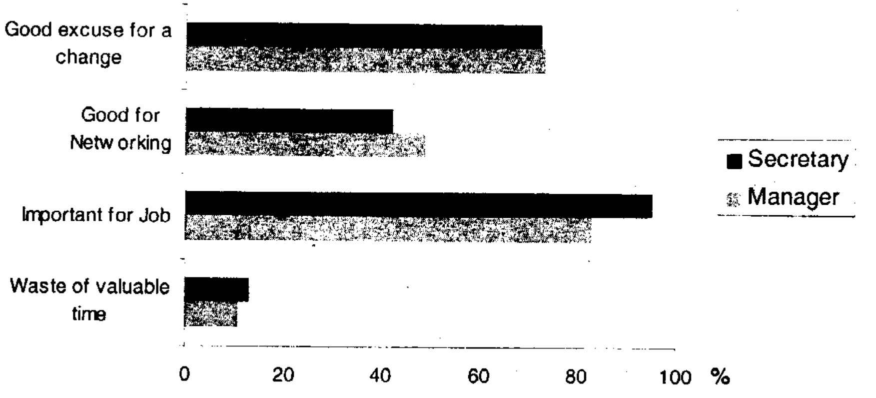
Write a report for a university lecturer, describing the information shown below.

You should write at least 150 words.

Training - hours per year



Office Workers' Attitude to Training



WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Present a written argument or case to an educated non-specialist audience on the following topic.

To be labelled a "Work of Art", a painting, sculpture or other art form should display certain qualities that are unique. However, over the past

century there has been a decline in the quality of prize-winning artwork and it is now possible for quite ordinary pieces of art to be labelled 'masterpieces' whilst true works of art pass unnoticed.

Do you agree or disagree? Give reasons for your answer.

You should write at least 250 words.

Use your own ideas, knowledge and experience and support your arguments with examples and relevant evidence.

TEST 2

WRITING TASK 1

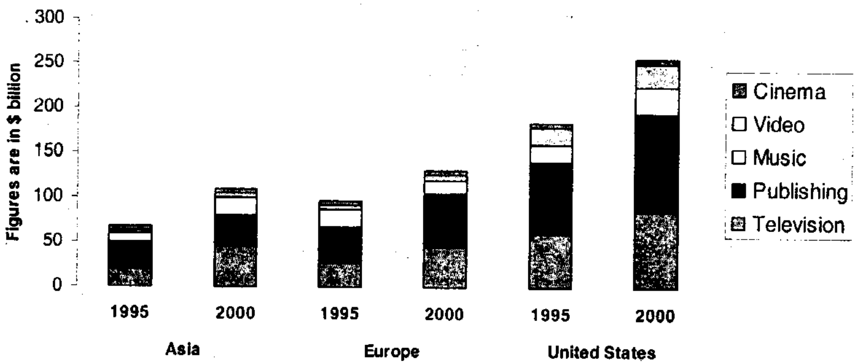
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows how money was spent on different forms of entertainment over a five-year period.

Write a report for a university lecturer describing the information shown below.

Fun money

World entertainment markets



You should write at least 150 words.

WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Present a written argument or case to an educated reader with no specialist knowledge of the following topic:

The idea of having a single career is becoming an old fashioned one. The new fashion will be to have several careers or ways of earning money and further education will be something that continues throughout life.

You should write at least 250 words.

Use your own ideas, knowledge and experience and support your arguments with examples and relevant evidence.

136 BEST MODEL ESSAYS

by Milon Nandy

Tổng hợp các bài luận hay nhất thường gặp trong các kỳ thi hiện nay với các chủ đề trong nhà trường, xã hội và cuộc sống cùng các phân tích bố cục và kỹ thuật viết thực tế

- Bài dịch song ngữ và tóm lược dàn ý của các bài luận mẫu.
- Phân tích bố cục và kỹ thuật viết luận.
- Ghi chú các từ vựng quan trọng cho từng bài mẫu.
- Mẫu tham khảo cách viết thư thương mại và thư tín cá nhân.
- Cách trình bày một bản sơ yếu lý lịch xin việc.
- Phụ lục về hệ thống giáo dục và cấu trúc tổ chức thương mại, các công ty đa quốc gia Anh, Mỹ.

